

NEW EDITION

C O L L O Q U I A L

ITALIAN

The Complete Course for Beginners

Sylvia Lymbery

Colloquial

Italian

The Colloquial Series

Series Adviser: Gary King

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

Afrikaans	French	Portuguese of
Albanian	German	Brazil
Amharic	Greek	Romanian
*Arabic (Levantine)	*Gujarati	Russian
Arabic of Egypt	Hebrew	Scottish Gaelic
*Arabic of the Gulf and Saudi Arabia	Hindi	Serbian
*Basque	Hungarian	Slovak
Breton	Icelandic	Slovene
*Bulgarian	Indonesian	*Somali
Cambodian	Italian	Spanish
Cantonese	Japanese	Spanish of Latin America
Catalan	Korean	Swahili
Chinese	Latvian	Swedish
Croatian	Lithuanian	Tamil
Czech	Malay	Thai
Danish	Mongolian	Turkish
Dutch	Norwegian	Ukrainian
English	*Panjabi	*Urdu
Estonian	Persian	Vietnamese
Finnish	Polish	Welsh
	Portuguese	

COLLOQUIAL CD-ROMs

Multimedia Language Courses

Chinese	French	Portuguese
Spanish		

Accompanying cassette(s) and CDs are available for all the above titles (cassettes only for the titles marked with *). They can be ordered through your bookseller, or send payment with order to Routledge Ltd, ITPS, Cheriton House, North Way, Andover, Hants SP10 5BE, or to Routledge Inc, 270 Madison Ave, New York, NY 10016, USA.

COLLOQUIAL 2s Series

The Next Step in Language Learning

Dutch	French	Italian
Russian	Spanish	Spanish of Latin America

Colloquial Italian

The Complete Course
for Beginners

Sylvia Lymbery

First published 1996 by Routledge
Reprinted 1998, 1999 (twice), 2000, 2001

Second edition published 2005
by Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon Oxon OX14 4RN

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada
by Routledge
270 Madison Ave, New York, NY 10016

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group

© 2005 Sylvia Lymbery

Typeset in Times by
Florence Production Ltd, Stoodleigh, Devon
Printed and bound in Great Britain by
TJ International Ltd, Padstow, Cornwall

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the
British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
Lymbery, Sylvia.

Colloquial Italian: the complete course for beginners/

Sylvia Lymbery. – 2nd edn.

p. cm – (The colloquial series)

Includes index.

1. Italian language – Conversation and phrase books – English. 2. Italian language – Textbooks for foreign speakers – English. 3. Italian language – Spoken Italian.

I. Title. II. Series

PC1121.L95 2005

458.3'421 – dc22

2004024087

ISBN 0-415-36268-7 (pbk)
ISBN 0-415-36269-5 (audio cassettes)
ISBN 0-415-36270-9 (audio CDs)
ISBN 0-415-36271-7 (pack)

This book is dedicated to
Charlotte

Contents

Acknowledgments	ix
Map of Italy	x
About this book	xi
The sounds of Italian	xv
1 Buongiorno, un caffè per favore	1
Good morning, a coffee please	
2 Mi chiamo Harry, sono americano, e Lei?	16
My name's Harry, I'm American, and you?	
3 In città	32
In town	
4 In viaggio	50
Travelling	
5 Vorrei comprare/Quanto costa?	65
I'd like to buy/How much does it cost?	
6 Appuntamenti	81
Engagements	
7 Giriamo	102
Let's get out and about	
8 Un po' di geografia	121
A little geography	
9 Buon appetito	136
Enjoy your meal	

10 Buone vacanze	148
Have a good holiday	
11 Che cosa ha visto?	163
What did you see?	
12 Ecco la mia casa	177
This is my home	
13 La vita è cambiata	188
Life has changed	
14 Alla salute!	202
Here's to your health!	
15 Buona fortuna!	215
Good luck!	
16 Progetti e previsioni – che sarà, sarà	232
Plans and predictions – what will be, will be	
17 Un vestito per un matrimonio	246
A dress for a wedding	
Grammar summary	260
Key to exercises	278
Italian–English glossary	303
English–Italian glossary	337
Index	346

Acknowledgments

I would like to offer my warmest thanks to the many friends who helped me when I was writing *Colloquial Italian*. In particular, to Angioletta Viviani, whose hospitality and advice helped me start to prepare this new edition, and to Sandra Silipo for help and advice. Others too numerous to list have helped in various ways, and their support is very much appreciated. Thanks must also go to Antonio Ravarino for his plan and architectural drawings.

I am also grateful to: the Editor of *La Stampa*, Torino, for permission to reproduce a weather forecast; to *La Stampa* and Lietta Tornabuoni for permission to use parts of her article, *Italia 1945–1995 Con gli occhi aperti*; the Editor and editorial staff of *Vera* magazine for permission to reproduce parts of the article *Per le vie dei borghi doc* from the March 2003 issue; Bernardo Cioni and Lorenzo Enriques of Zanichelli Editore for permission to reproduce Dott. Cioni's email; the Mayor of Apricale for permission to reproduce the photo of Apricale from the town's website: www.apricale.org; Bologna Turismo – Redazione IAT for permission to reproduce the photos of the Palazzo del Podestà in Piazza Maggiore and of the fruit and vegetable shop in the Mercato Antico; the IAT of Perugia for permission to reproduce the photo of the Palazzo dei Priori and the Fontana Maggiore; the Azienda di Promozione Turistica di Roma for permission to reproduce the photos of the Campidoglio and of the Vittoriano; Suzanne Cousin for the photograph of Santa Maria Novella, Florence; the Servizi Turistico-Ricreativi department of the Province of Verona for permission to reproduce the photo of the Roman Arena; the Comando Generale dell'Arma dei Carabinieri for permission to reproduce the photo of a carabiniere at work.

And finally my thanks go to Sophie Oliver and her helpful team at Routledge.

Permission to use the extract 'Il mio primo computer: Il pc ideale per un bambino?' from *Anna* magazine was sought but no reply received.



Italy: regions and regional capitals

About this book

So you are thinking of learning Italian? Or perhaps you are already learning and want another approach to help you on your way? Read on and you will see why *Colloquial Italian* could be just what you are looking for.

Why Italian?

Italian is the language of Italy and it is also one of the four official languages of Switzerland. With a population of some 58 million and an area of 301,323 sq km, Italy is a small country; but for more than two thousand years its inhabitants have had significant effects on civilization, while the land of Italy has for centuries been a source of pleasure and interest to travellers. Today it continues to offer the tourist many and varied delights: scenery, artistic treasures, music, good food and wine, snow, sun and sea. The Italian Republic is one of the founder members of the European Union and for businesses Italy offers both opportunities and challenges.

There *are* problems of a political, economic and environmental nature that may frustrate and annoy the traveller but overall Italy is a very welcoming country and a fascinating subject of study.

The language is arguably the easiest European language for English speakers to learn. The pronunciation seems easier than French for English speakers, the grammar less tricky than that of German or Russian. Furthermore, the spelling of the language reflects the way words are said and the meanings of many of the words are guessable.

Italian has its origins in Latin, the language spoken in Ancient Rome. For anyone who has studied Latin or one of the Romance languages (languages derived closely from Latin such as Spanish, French or Portuguese), it is particularly approachable, for not only will many more words be guessable but the structure too will be

similar to that of the language they know. This is not to say it is trouble free, but you, the learner, can feel optimistic as you start the task.

As a nation-state Italy is young. It was united between 1860 and 1870 after centuries of division into a number of smaller states. At the time of unification Italian was essentially a written language used by poets, playwrights and other writers. Only a small percentage of the population spoke it. Most communicated in their local dialect. Today universal education, military service, population mobility and television and radio mean that most Italians speak and understand Italian although many also continue to speak their local dialect.

Colloquial Italian

The aim has been to write a book in which the learner, who may not have experience of learning foreign languages, is helped with the difficulties, particularly in the early and potentially confusing stages. At the same time we have tried not to insult the learner's intelligence. As has been said, many Italian words are guessable and we have deliberately challenged the learner by introducing a wide vocabulary, confident that he/she will find it manageable. We have tried, too, to entertain and stimulate.

As a language learner you need to be aware that different people learn languages in different ways. Try to find the way that works for you. There are few people who can sit down with a grammar book, read the rules, do some exercises and start speaking the language. Many people find it helpful to become familiar with chunks of language, for instance the dialogues and texts in *Colloquial Italian*. Listen to the recordings and try to get to know them well; go back over them after a break, too, brushing up your memory. Why not listen to the recordings in your car while you sit in a traffic jam? Or while you are doing something that does not engage your mind? Gradually you will find you can start to express yourself in Italian. You can also try talking to yourself in Italian, again in idle moments. It doesn't matter that you may not always get it right. It is the *practice* in trying to find a way of saying what you want to in Italian that helps.

Learning a language takes patience and determination. You will have your ups and downs, your moments of frustration but

moments of satisfaction too. We recommend you try a ‘little and often’ routine: work at your Italian regularly but not necessarily for long periods of time.

Many people find it helpful to back up their learning in every way available to them: exchanging a few words with a friendly waiter in an Italian restaurant, or watching Italian films. Treat yourself to an Italian magazine or newspaper occasionally. The biggest aid of all is a trip to Italy. Don’t, however, expect too much from the first visit. Much will depend on the extent to which you are able to be with Italians and ‘have a go’. ‘Having a go’ is probably the key to success. But beware: you will always understand more than you can say. Make the most of each opportunity and above all don’t worry about making mistakes. Italians are usually delighted when foreigners try to speak their language. We can almost guarantee they won’t laugh at you.

Getting started

You almost certainly already know a number of Italian words. Stop reading and write down those that come into your mind. Add to your list the names of places in Italy or of famous Italians that come to mind.

Did your list include greetings such as **ciao**, **arrivederci**? Or perhaps words relating to food and drink such as: **pasta**, **spaghetti**, **pesto**, **pizza**, **ciabatta**, **gelato**, **vino**, **cappuccino**, **gorgonzola**, **Chianti**, **Asti spumante**. You know words related to music such as: **orchestra**, **cello**, **piccolo**, **pianoforte**, **solo**, **soprano**, **aria**. Or words such as: **chiaroscuro**, **fresco**, **ghetto**, **piazza**, **viva voce**.*

How about the names of people and places? Did you have **Armani**, **Dolce e Gabbana**, **Gucci**, **Versace**? Or **Giotto**, **Botticelli**, **Piero della Francesca**? Or maybe **Vivaldi**, **Puccini**, **Verdi**, **Palestrina**. Or again **Maserati**, **Ferrari**, **Lamborghini**, **Fiat**, **Lancia**, or **Romano Prodi**, **Roberto Benigni**, **Andrea Bocelli**, **Cecilia Bartoli**, . . . Oh, we nearly forgot **Luciano Pavarotti**! Or perhaps you had some other words or names. It all depends on your own personal interests. Place names are often anglicized: Rome, Venice, Milan, Florence, Tuscany, Sicily . . . but you may know **Palermo**, **Catolica**, **Rimini**, **Como**, **Garda**, **Brindisi** . . .

* See p. xviii for an explanation of the use of underlining in this book to indicate stress.

So you see you already have an idea of how Italian looks and sounds. One immediately noticeable feature is that words mostly end with vowels. You will gradually learn that these final vowels often carry meaning. Italian is an *inflected* language. This means the endings of words vary to express grammatical information. To a certain extent this happens in English: ‘book/books’, where the ‘s’ expresses the plural. It is more developed in Italian but you, the learner, should not worry too much: in the heat of a conversation, if you are unsure, your meaning will usually be clear even if you slur the word ending to cover your uncertainty. Gradually, with practice, this aspect of the language slots into place.

So, you’re ready to go.

Good luck! **In bocca al lupo!**

The sounds of Italian 🎧

What follows does not pretend to be a full treatment of Italian pronunciation but rather a practical guide to help the foreign learner speak in a way that is reasonably comprehensible and acceptable. It should also be viewed as a reference section, which will be difficult to absorb in one reading but can be returned to from time to time. There is also help in the matching section of the recording that accompanies *Colloquial Italian*.

Italian spelling reflects the sounds of the Italian language on a more direct basis than English spelling does for English. There are however some cases where the spelling conventions of Italian conflict with those of English and it is important that students get these clear in their mind from the start.

Two consecutive vowels

Two vowels next to each other are each pronounced, rather than run into each other as in English. For example, the Italian unit of currency is **un euro**, in which, in contrast to English, the ‘**eu**’ is pronounced as two separate sounds. Similarly:

paura buono paese aereo lui lei

Double consonants

When a word is spelled with a double consonant, it is because the sound is different from the same consonant written as a single letter. It takes practice to get this right but it is important. Try to linger on the double consonant or pause before it. The preceding vowel becomes shorter: Listen to the difference:

**pena/penna steso/stesso fata/fatta
eco/ecco**

Here are some more words with double consonants:

freddo bello mamma anno cappuccino
terra stesso pazzo nonno

'r' in Italian

The Italian **r** is rolled with the tongue. There is no real English equivalent. The letter appears only when the **r** is pronounced: **porta**, **arte**. Note the difference between **cane** 'dog' and **carne** 'meat'. Some Italians make their **r** in their throats but it is always audible and more prominent than in standard English.

And when there is double **rr** in the spelling, there are two **rs** in the sound. Try these:

at the beginning of a word:	riso	Roma	Rialto	ragazzo
between two vowels:	ora	caro	durare	Torino
double r:	birra	ferro	terra	burro
after another consonant:	prima	crollo	dramma	
before another consonant:	arte	porta	ormai	urlo

So far, so good. The remaining sounds are, however, those where the spelling conventions of English and Italian differ significantly and learners should pay particular attention to them. Using the recordings and imitating them throughout the course will also help you avoid errors.

The spellings gn, gli

These spellings represent sounds that are a little difficult to pronounce:

gn is similar to the sound in the middle of *onion*
giugno bagno agnello

gl(i) is a little like the sound in the middle of *million*:
lugio figlio maglia gli

The sounds k and g (as in 'come' and 'go') and ch and j (as in 'church' and 'judge')

With the sounds **k** (as in 'come' in English) and **g** (as in 'go') there is no pronunciation problem, but the spelling *depends on which vowel follows*. The vowels divide into two groups:

1 If the vowel following **k** or **g** is **a, o, u**:

k is written 'c' **cane, campo, caffè, casa, cosa, costa, come, Como, curioso, cuore, cultura**

g is written 'g' **galleria, gamba, gallese, Garda, gondola, gorgonzola, Goldoni, Gonzaga, guidare, guardare, Gubbio, Guttuso**

2 If the vowel following **k** or **g** is **e, i**:

k is written 'ch' **che, orchestra, bruschetta, chi, chilo, Cherubino, Michelangelo, Chianti, Chiusi, Chioggia**

g is written 'gh' **ghetto, spaghetti, Ghirlandaio, Lamborghini**

The same grouping of vowels is also important in the spelling conventions for the sound pairs **ch** (as in 'church') and **j** (as in 'judge')

1 If the vowel following **ch** or **j** is **a, o, u**:

ch is written 'ci' **ciao, ciò, Luciano, Lancia**

j is written 'gi' **giapponese, giallo, giorno, giovedì, giù, giusto, Giulia, Giuseppe**

2 If the vowel following **ch** or **j** is **e, i**:

ch is written 'c' **cento, cena, certo, violoncello, San Francesco, Botticelli, cibo, cinema, cappuccino, Puccini**

j is written 'g' **gente, generalmente, gelato, geografia, gita, girare, Gino, Gilda**

The sound sh

Finally the spelling of the sound **sh** (as in 'shoe'):

1 followed by **a, o, u** it is written 'sci':

sciarpa, sciopero, sciupare

2 followed by **e** or **i** it is written just 'sc':

scendere, pesce, sci, Gramsci

Stress

The most common place for an Italian word to be stressed is on the syllable before the last (the *penultimate* syllable, as underlined):

italiano aeroporto interessante il mondo moderno
la stazione della ferrovia

Some words are stressed on the *final* vowel. In that case the vowel is written with an accent:

città possibilità perciò tivù

The most problematic words for the foreign learner are those where the *antepenultimate* (the third from the end) syllable is stressed:

sabato domenica albero cinema chilometro lettera
libero macchina medico telefono

There is no rule for this. Certain types of words, e.g. adjectives ending in **-atico** (**simpatico**, **democratico**) or in **-abile** (**probabile**, **amabile**) always have the stress on the antepenultimate syllable.

Occasionally, for instance, the stress may fall on the *fourth* syllable from the end: this occurs in the third person plural of some verbs, e.g. **telefonano**.

Dictionaries give help with stress and so does our ‘Italian–English glossary’ (pp. 303–36), where underlining shows unusual stress. Stress is also indicated in this way in the pronunciation section of the book and in verb tables, etc. But in print or in writing, it is not normally indicated. The best you can do is *listen* to Italians speaking and try to build up a sound memory. However, stress is important. The wrong stress is more likely to obscure your meaning than a generally not very Italian-sounding accent.

Related to stress is *intonation*, the ‘tune of the phrase’. This is also best acquired by imitation and should not constitute a big problem.

The Italian alphabet

The Italian language uses an alphabet of twenty-one letters. The other letters of our familiar twenty-six-letter alphabet are used in writing foreign words. When spelling something out for someone,

especially over the telephone, it is usual to use the names of towns to make the letter clear (as shown in the following list). Below is a list of letters, with their pronunciations and the town name usually used:

a	<i>a</i>	Ancona	m	<i>emme</i>	Milano
b	<i>bi</i>	Bologna/Bari	n	<i>enne</i>	Napoli
c	<i>ci</i>	Como	o	<i>o</i>	Otranto
d	<i>di</i>	Domodossola	p	<i>pi</i>	Pisa
e	<i>e</i>	Empoli	q	<i>cu</i>	cu
f	<i>effe</i>	Firenze	r	<i>erre</i>	Roma
g	<i>gi</i>	Genova	s	<i>esse</i>	Savona
h	<i>acca</i>	hotel	t	<i>ti</i>	Torino
i	<i>i</i>	Imola	u	<i>u</i>	Udine
l	<i>elle</i>	Livorno	v	<i>vi/vu</i>	Venezia
			z	<i>zeta</i>	Zara

The following are not considered Italian letters and are used mainly in foreign words:

j	<i>i lungo/a</i>	x	<i>ics</i>
k	<i>cappa</i>	y	<i>i greco/a, ippsilon</i>
w	<i>vi/vu doppio/a</i>		

Examples of how a name can be spelt out, especially over the telephone:

Roma, Otranto, Savona, Savona, Imola = Rossi

Savona, Milano, Imola, Torino, hotel = Smith

**Livorno, i greco, Milano, Bologna, Empoli, Roma, i greco
= Lymbery**

The letters are considered either masculine or feminine: some people will say **i greca** rather than **i greco**. They are not usually made plural, so **ss** is **due esse**; also **doppio esse** or **doppia esse**.

Accents

An accent is used to indicate the stress when it falls on the final vowel of a word. There is some discussion in Italy about using

acute (´) or grave (`) accents, particularly over the letter **e**, where some people like to show an open **e**/closed **e** distinction. In practice, when writing, Italians write something that could be either: **e**. You are advised to do the same.

In a very few cases an accent is used to distinguish one word from another:

e	and	è	is
da	from	dà	gives
ne	of it, of them etc.	nè	neither, nor
si	oneself	sì	yes
se	if	sè	oneself, himself, herself (reflexive pronoun, strong form)
la	the (also a pronoun)	là	there
li	(pronoun)	lì	there

Did you find all this difficult to absorb? Of course you did. Don't worry, it will gradually make sense. And don't forget to use the 'Sounds of Italian' section on the recording.

1 Buongiorno, un caffè per favore

Good morning, a coffee please

In this unit you will learn about:

- Ordering a drink or a snack
- Greetings and simple courtesies
- Introducing Italian nouns, with indefinite articles, e.g. 'a coffee', 'an orangeade'; nouns ending in **-o** and **-a**
- Prices
- Numbers 1–10, 20–100, 200 etc.; 1,000, 2,000 etc.
- Singular personal pronouns, e.g. 'I, she' etc.
- The verbs 'to be' and 'to have' in the singular, e.g. 'am'

Cultural point

First things first, let's get a drink. In Italy the bar (**bar** or **caffè**) is a popular meeting place as well as being a place to drop in for a coffee, a glass of water on a hot day, a snack or an ice cream. Many bars have terraces where, in the summer, people sit outside chatting, reading the newspaper or watching everyone else go by. Of course there are bars of all sorts, from the very elegant to the simple and down to earth. Popular drinks are:

- caffè** a small very strong black coffee, also called **espresso**
cappuccino a small, very strong, black coffee with frothy milk added, often sprinkled with powdered chocolate
vino, bianco o rosso wine, white or red
acqua minerale, naturale o gassata (bottled) mineral water, still or fizzy

tè, con latte o con limone tea, with milk or with lemon

tè freddo iced tea, a refreshing drink in hot weather

birra beer

succo di frutta fruit juice

succo di pera, di mela, di arancia pear, apple, orange juice

spremuta di arancia, limone, pompelmo juice of a freshly squeezed orange, lemon or grapefruit

You can also order **un panino**, a bread roll with a filling, for example ham, egg or mozzarella and tomato; **un toast**, a toasted ham and cheese sandwich; or, for the sweet-toothed, **una pasta** ‘a pastry’, or **una brioche** ‘a brioche’ or **un gelato** ‘an ice cream’.

Dialogue 1

If you have the recording, for this and all dialogues, see if you can understand without looking at the book. Good practice for real life situations! Answer the question below. You may need to listen more than once but persevere.

Al bar

A group of friends order drinks.

- **Among the drinks ordered are some not explained above. Can you pick them out and guess what they are?**

CAMERIERE: Buongiorno. Prego.

PAOLO: Una birra, per favore.

ANNA: Per me, un caffè.

TOMMASO: Un vino bianco.

MARISA: Un’aranciata.

FILIPPO: Una Coca-Cola.

CAMERIERE: Una birra, un caffè, un vino bianco, un’aranciata e una Coca-Cola. Va bene.

The drinks not explained were **un’aranciata** ‘an orangeade (fizzy)’ and **una Coca-Cola**. No prizes for guessing that! You will find answers to questions and exercises in the ‘Key to exercises’ at the back of the book.

Vocabulary notes

prego lit. ‘I pray, I beg’. Here an invitation to order. **Prego** is also used to reply when someone thanks you for something: ‘don’t mention it, not at all, you’re welcome’.

per favore ‘please’

per me ‘for me’

va bene ‘fine, OK’. **Va bene** is used not just in casual speech, like OK. It is acceptable in a formal context too.

Language point

Introducing Italian nouns and indefinite articles

Italian nouns are either *masculine* or *feminine*. This is sometimes related to sex, in the cases of people or animals for example, but not always. The word for ‘a, an’ is **un** with a masculine noun and **una** with a feminine noun.

	<i>Masculine</i>		<i>Feminine</i>
un	{ vino caffè gelato succo di frutta panino tè toast	una	{ birra aranciata spremuta pasta brioche Coca-Cola

Note: When **una** comes before a noun beginning with a vowel, such as **acqua**, it is usual to drop the **a** of **una** and just say **un**’. When speaking, it comes naturally to run one vowel into another. When writing this, you put an apostrophe (’) to show something has been left out: **un’aranciata**, **un’acqua minerale**.

un, **una** also mean ‘one’. When the word ‘one’ is not used with a noun, the masculine form is **uno**. See below, p. 6.

Many masculine Italian nouns end in **-o**, and many feminine nouns end in **-a**. This makes it easy to guess the gender of a noun

in very many cases. In the above list there are some foreign words adopted by Italian which do not fit this pattern: **caffè**, **Coca-Cola**, **tè**, **toast** and **brioche**. Mostly foreign words adopted into Italian are masculine. **Brioche** and **Coca-Cola**, which are feminine, are exceptions. Try to learn the *gender* of a noun at the same time as learning the noun.

Cultural point

Many Italians like to breakfast in a bar on their way to work. This is not just to save time, but they will tell you they prefer the coffee from the espresso machines in the bar. In most bars, particularly in cities, you go to the cash desk first and say what you want. You pay and are given a receipt (**scontrino**), which you then give to the barman, repeating your order. It is usual to stand at the bar with your drink. If you sit down, you get service at the table and pay extra – sometimes double. So think whether you want to sit and relax for some time, or whether in fact you just want a quick drink.

Dialogue 2

Prima colazione

It's the early morning rush hour in a busy bar. Maria and Piera pop in for breakfast. Maria first goes to the cash desk to pay.

1 What do Piera and Maria order to eat?

2 Do they each have the same drink?

CASSIERE: Desidera?
 MARIA: Per me un cappuccino e una brioche.
 PIERA: E per me un caffè e una pasta.
 CASSIERE: 4 euro.
 MARIA: Ecco.
 CASSIERE: Ecco lo scontrino.

Maria and Piera go to the bar.

MARIA: Scusi!
 BARISTA: Sì, signorina. Mi dica.
 MARIA: Un cappuccino e una brioche, per favore.



BARISTA: (to her friend) E Lei?
 PIERA: Per me un caffè e una pasta.
 BARISTA: Un cappuccino e un caffè. Va bene.

*Maria and Piera help themselves to the **brioche** and the **pasta** in the display case on the counter.*

Vocabulary notes

prima colazione 'breakfast'

desidera? lit. 'you desire?'. The cashier is asking what Maria wants.

ecco 'here you are'; also 'here is/here are, there is/there are' (pointing something out)

scusi 'excuse me'. In a busy bar, use **scusi** or **mi scusi** to catch the barman's attention; another way is **sentà**, literally 'listen'.

mi dica (often just **dica**) lit. 'tell me'. The barman is indicating that he is ready to listen to the order. Compare with **desidera** and in the previous conversation **prego**.

Lei 'you' (formal)

una pasta 'a pastry'. **pasta** is also, of course, the generic word for all the various types of **spaghetti**, **macaroni** etc.

Language points

Prices

Italy adopted the **euro**, the European Union common currency, from the start. It is divided into 100 **centesimi**. The euro symbol is €. Note: **euro** does not change in the plural. So we have:

1 **euro**, 2 **euro** etc.

but

1 **centesimo**, 2 **centesimi** etc.

Numbers

To deal with prices you will need numbers, **i numeri**.

1	uno, una	6	sei
2	due	7	sette
3	tre	8	otto
4	quattro	9	nove
5	cinque	10	dieci

From these it is easy to move to the hundreds and thousands:

100	cento	200	duecento	300	trecento
1.000	mille	2.000	duemila	3.000	tremila

Note: **mille** has a plural form **mila** but **cento** does not change in the plural. You will notice that the thousands are marked by a full stop as in **10.000** and not by a comma (English '10,000'). A comma is used where English uses the decimal point: **virgola** = 'comma', so **2,5** is said **due virgola cinque** '2.5, two point five'.

For prices you will need the numbers between 20 and 99, which are plain sailing:

20	venti	60	sessanta
30	trenta	70	settanta
40	quaranta	80	ottanta
50	cinquanta	90	novanta

And the following should serve to show the pattern of the numbers in between:

21	ventuno	31	trentuno
22	ventidue	32	trentadue

23	ventitrè	33	trentatrè
24	ventiquattro	34	trentaquattro
25	venticinque	35	trentacinque
26	ventisei	36	trentasei
27	ventisette	37	trentasette
28	ventotto	38	trentotto
29	ventinove	39	trentanove

Note: The final vowel is **i** for **venti** and **a** for **trenta** and all the others; it is dropped when the word is combined with **uno** and **otto**, e.g. **settantuno**.

Reminder: This applies only to the numbers 21 to 98. It does not apply to **cento**, **centouno** etc.

The accent on **ventitrè** etc. is to indicate the stress.

More about indefinite articles

Can you guess whether the word **scontrino** is masculine or feminine? Like most nouns ending in **-o** it is masculine. However, ‘a till receipt’ is **uno scontrino**. As you will perhaps know from listening to Italians speaking English, the Italian language avoids clusters of consonants and Italians find them difficult in English. The combination **n + s + c** is avoided by inserting an **o**: **uno scontrino**.

This applies to other masculine words beginning with **s** + another consonant. For example the English word ‘sport’ has been adopted into Italian. Like most foreign words used in Italian it is ...? Yes, masculine. So you say **uno sport**.

The problem does not arise with feminine nouns because there is already the vowel **-a** in **una**; e.g. **una spremuta**.

Exercise 1

You are a waiter with a long list of drinks to get for a large group at a table on the terrace outside in the square. Here is the list, but the word for ‘a’ has been left out. Recite the list to the barman, using the appropriate word for ‘a’.

___ vino rosso ___ gelato ___ birra ___ caffè
 ___ acqua minerale ___ spremuta ___ succo di frutta
 ___ tè ___ vino bianco ___ aranciata

When you have checked your answers, say the words out loud to get used to the sound. It will also be helpful in memorizing them.

Exercise 2

You are an Englishman who is on holiday in Italy with your family. They decide that, since you have been learning Italian, you ought to do the ordering for them. So, be the interpreter to the barman in this bar. This means you have to put the words in italics into Italian in the spaces provided.

BARISTA: **Buongiorno. Prego.**

YOU: (to your wife) What would you like, darling?

YOUR WIFE: (1) *A white coffee.*

YOU: (to the barman) _____.

(to your daughter) And you, Jane?

JANE: (2) *An orangeade.*

YOU: (to the barman) _____.

(to your son) Mark?

MARK: (3) *A fresh orange drink.*

YOU: (to the barman) _____.

BARISTA: **E per Lei, signore?**

YOU: (for yourself order (4) *a beer*; you deserve it after all that) _____.

Exercise 3

Read the following numbers out loud and then write them out as numerals.

1 sette

2 nove

3 quattrocento

4 ottocentotré

5 duemilacinquecento

6 milletrecento

7 diecimila

8 seimilacento

9 cinquantacinque

10 settantanove

Exercise 4

Here are some travel tickets and receipts. Write down the price in words and say it to yourself.

1 Train ticket: Firenze – Pisa Centrale.

2 Bus ticket.

3 Books at the airport bookshop (Berretta SRL).

4 The hat bought at Lorenzini in Cortona?

MACPELLERIA JACOMONI ALDO
 P.zza GRAMURA 1.30 M.S.S. NO
 P.IVA 0006770515
 TELEFONO 0575/844098
 RAPPRESENTAZIONE E GRAZIE...

PESSO	PREZZO	IMPORTO
Kg	€/kg	EURO
0.212	18.08	3.83
6.194	10.33	2.00
0.460	10.33	4.75
MC 3	TOTALE €	10,58
	TOTALE L.	20485

(1€ = 1936,27)
 Banco: 0 Operatore:
 Data: 11-06-04 Ora 11
 N.Scontr. fiscale 20
 P.F DA 15001753

La Posta BAR
 P.zza SIGNORELLI,32
 CORTONA (AR)
 P.IVA 01184668517

	EURO
REPAR 101	0,88
REPAR 101	0,88
TOTALE	1,68
10/06/2004	14-29
SC. FISC. N.	19
P.FGR 11010055	

LORENZINI
 CORTONA

CALZATURE
 LORENZINI ENRICO
 PIAZZA REPUBBLICA,18
 CORTONA (AR)
 P.IVA 01274788517

	EURO
CAPPELLI	30,88
TOTALE	30,88
10/06/2004	14-47
SC. FISC. N.	2
P.FGR 11002387	
GRAZIE TEL.0575/683296	

106104 15:19 MS

LA RAPPRESENTAZIONE ITALIANA S.p.A.
 PREZZO - TEL. 071/208888
 P. IVA 00000010

LFI

BIGLIETTO
 CS. SEMPLICE
 EXTRAURBANO
 CL_TARIF_03

EURO 2,10
 COD. 3803
 N° PROG. 22063
 DA COMPLETARE SE ASSICURATO

ISSUE N°
 AUTOMATICO (NON FOTOCOPIARE)
 [L] [M] [N] [O] [V] [SA] [DO]

PERCORSO
 SA
 A

BERRETTA S.R.L.
 AEROPORTO G.GALILEI PISA
 TABACCHI E GIORNALI
 P.IVA 01450400500

	EURO
LIBRI/GUIDE	15,00
LIBRI/GUIDE	5,00
TOTALE	20,00
14/06/2004	16-11
SC. FISC. N.	851
P.FGR 11018003	

EN 7516027 | **CSTO** | P.IVA 05402151003 | 1/1

Il presente biglietto è utilizzabile fino al **13/08/04**
 Validità dalla convalida: **6 ORE** | 01 Adulti | ** Ragazzi

Da FIRENZE	Classe 2 VIA EMPOLI*
A PISA CENTRALE	
Tar 39/01 INT25 Km. 81	
TOSCANA	

Da _____ Classe _____
 A _____
 Tar _____ Km _____

Big. n° ******3,71** C.Servizi:***** Serv.spazi:***** Prezzo E. ******3,71***
 000244 14/06/04 14.25 0484
 568 201 AREZZO
 0753EM7516027

FORNITURA ANDATA 1001200130015001700190011200115001 FORNITURA RITORNO 1001200130015001700190011200115001

- 5 Two coffees at the Bar la Posta. How much was each?
- 6 Meat at the Macelleria Jacomoni.

You may have noticed that the butcher's receipt also shows the total in lire and gives the value of a euro. Doubtless the till was programmed to help customers at the time of the changeover.

Greetings and courtesies (1)

As in English, the greeting you use depends on the time of day and who you are talking to. **buongiorno** is the equivalent of both

‘good morning’ and ‘good afternoon’. It is used in any formal situation: in a shop, a hotel, in a bank, greeting someone you do not know well, greeting colleagues in the morning etc.

Dialogue 3

Un appuntamento con il signor Rossi

Angela Smith has an appointment to see signor Rossi. She goes into the outer office, where the secretary greets her.

- 1 What does the secretary invite Mrs Smith to do?**
- 2 What words does Mr Rossi use to invite Mrs Smith to sit down?**

SECRETARIA: Buongiorno, signora. Mi dica.
 SMITH: Buongiorno, signorina. Sono Angela Smith.
 SECRETARIA: Ah, signora Smith, buongiorno. Un attimo, prego. Si accomodi.

(The secretary disappears into the inner office and a moment later Mr Rossi comes out to Mrs Smith.)

ROSSI: Buongiorno, signora Smith. Venga, venga. *(He motions to Mrs Smith to go into his office.)*
 SMITH: Buongiorno, signor Rossi.
 ROSSI: S'accomodi, prego. *(He indicates a chair for Mrs Smith.)* Come va?
 SMITH: Bene, grazie. E Lei?

Vocabulary

sono	I am
un attimo	just a moment
s'accomodi, si accomodi	sit down, make yourself comfortable
prego	here please, do (sit down)
venga	come this way (lit. come)
come va?	how are you?
bene grazie, e Lei?	well thanks, and you?
signor (abbr. to sig.)	Mr
signora (abbr. to sig.ra)	Mrs
signorina (abbr. to sig.na)	Miss

It is usual *not* to capitalize these titles. As yet, there is no Italian equivalent to ‘Ms’. Italian women continue officially to use their maiden name after marriage, although socially they may use their husband’s name.

When you do not know a person’s name, it is usual to refer to them as:

signore
signora
signorina

e.g. **Scusi, signora . . .**

Note that the word **signore** has an **-e** on the end when it is used without the name, i.e. it becomes three syllables. In practice, too, the choice of **signora** or **signorina** depends partly on the age of the lady although **signorina** is not used a great deal. **signora** is preferred.

Dialogue 4

Un incontro per la strada

Mrs Martini meets her son’s school teacher in the street. Her son, Marco, is at home with a cold.

• Why is the conversation a rather short one?

INSEGNANTE:	Buongiorno, signora. Come va?
SIG.RA MARTINI:	Buongiorno, professore. Bene grazie, e Lei?
INSEGNANTE:	Bene grazie. E Marco?
SIG.RA MARTINI:	Marco sta male. Ha un raffreddore.
INSEGNANTE:	Mi dispiace, signora. E Suo marito?
SIG.RA MARTINI:	Sta bene, grazie. Lavora molto.
INSEGNANTE:	Mi scusi, devo andare. ArrivederLa a presto. Auguri a Marco e saluti a Suo marito.
SIG.RA MARTINI:	ArrivederLa, professore. Buongiorno.

Vocabulary

insegnante	teacher
Lei	you (formal form)
Marco sta male	Marco is ill

ha un raffreddore	he has a cold
mi dispiace	I am sorry, lit. ‘it displeases me’. Expressing regret about something unpleasant or unfortunate. It is slightly different from mi scusi (see below).
e Suo marito?	and your husband?
sta bene	he’s well
grazie	thank you
lavora molto	he is working hard (molto = a lot)
mi scusi	I am sorry, I apologize, excuse me (mi is often omitted)
devo andare	I have to go
a presto	see you soon
auguri	best wishes
saluti	greetings, say ‘hello’ to

Greetings and courtesies (2)

arrivederLa is a very formal way of saying ‘goodbye’. It is often used by shopkeepers, bank clerks etc. Less formal is **arrivederci**. It is also very common, when saying goodbye in formal conversations, to add **buongiorno** too, as Mrs Martini does. After mid-afternoon, people often use **buonasera** (lit. ‘good evening’) both to open the conversation and to close it. **buonanotte** means ‘good-night’ and is used to say goodbye at night, really wishing someone a good night’s sleep.

Mrs Martini’s relationship with her son’s teacher is formal so she calls him **professore** (‘teacher’). It is usual to use titles like this when talking to professional people (e.g. **avvocato**, **dottore**, **ingegnere**).

Look at Dialogue 5 to find out what you say when you are greeting friends.

Dialogue 5

Ciao, Gianni

PAOLO:	Ciao, Gianni. Come va?
GIANNI:	Oh, ciao Paolo.
PAOLO:	Tutto bene?
GIANNI:	Sì, grazie, e tu?

PAOLO: Si, tutto bene. Mi dispiace, devo scappare. Ciao. A presto.
 GIANNI: Ciao.

Vocabulary

tutto bene? Is everything all right? (lit. ‘all well?’)
scappare to run away (**devo scappare** is often used colloquially instead of **devo andare**)

Greetings and courtesies (3)

You say **ciao** both when you meet a friend and to say goodbye to him/her. You don’t say **Lei** to a friend, you use **tu**. You also use **tu** when talking to children, family and colleagues. These days, Italians on the whole prefer to use **tu** once they get to know you or if they are working with you. It is similar to using first names.

Language point

Personal pronouns and verbs

You have now met the word **Lei** several times. By convention it is written with a capital **L** although this convention is not always observed nowadays. It should be used in formal letter-writing. You have also met **tu**. ‘I’ is **io**. You may have noticed that after **per** (a preposition) you have a different form.

<i>Pronoun subject with verb</i>		<i>Pronoun after preposition</i>			
io	I	per {	for {		
tu	you (familiar)			me	me
Lei	you (formal)			te	you
		Lei	you		

Personal pronouns as subjects of a verb (‘I, you, he, we’ etc.) are usually not expressed in Italian as it is generally clear from the form of the verb who or what the subject of the verb is. For example, Angela Smith said **Sono Angela Smith**. She would only have said **Io sono Angela Smith** if she had been wanting to stress the ‘I’.

The verb **essere** ‘to be’ is irregular in Italian. Here are the forms for the singular:

(io) sono	I am
(tu) sei	you are (familiar)
(Lei) è	you are (formal)

Since the forms are different from each other, the subject pronoun is unnecessary, which is why it is given in brackets.

The present singular of **avere** ‘to have’ is:

(io) ho	I have
(tu) hai	you have (familiar)
(Lei) ha	you have (formal)

Note: The **h** is silent. This verb provides the only cases in Italian of an initial **h**.

Exercise 5

Rewrite this short conversation between two friends as an exchange between two people whose relationship is formal, Sig. Rossi and Avv. Bruni.

GIORGIO:	Ciao, Marco, come va?
MARCO:	Bene, grazie. E tu?
GIORGIO:	Bene. Devo andare. Ciao.
MARCO:	Ciao.

Exercise 6

Look back over the dialogues and pick out the verbs used without subject pronouns. (*Note:* **scusi** and **mi dica** are verbs in the command (imperative) form and would never have a pronoun with them. You are looking for other verbs.) Consult the ‘Key to exercises’ to see if you found them successfully.

Reading

Bar famosi

Read the passage and try to answer the questions. It is not necessary to understand every word. (*Warning:* These bars are expensive!)

- 1 **When did Florian's open?**
- 2 **What are the ingredients of the aperitif that is the speciality of Harry's Bar?**
- 3 **If you were hungry would it be a good place to go?**
- 4 **What is the name of its owner?**

In Piazza San Marco a Venezia c'è un bar antico e famoso: il Florian. Esiste dal 1720. All'interno, c'è un senso di intimità nelle sale di stile '700. Fuori ci sono numerosi tavolini proprio in Piazza San Marco, con un'orchestrina che suona per i clienti. E' bello sedersi lì e guardare la piazza famosa e la gente che passa.

Un altro bar famoso a Venezia è l'Harry's Bar. E' un bar molto elegante. Offre naturalmente caffè, vino, whisky e così via, ma anche un aperitivo famoso, 'il Bellini', vino bianco frizzante con succo di pesca. Harry's è un bar ma è anche un ristorante molto buono. L'Harry's Bar era il locale preferito di Hemingway e ancora oggi è frequentato da persone famose, attori, scrittori e così via. Il proprietario, Arrigo Cipriani, è anche lui un personaggio famoso a Venezia.

Vocabulary notes

stile '700 'eighteenth-century style', the style of the years from 1700 to 1799. It is usual in Italian to refer to a century this way. The twentieth century is the '900 – **Il novecento** (an abbreviation for **millenovecento**); as yet nothing similar has developed for the twenty-first century.

la gente 'people'. **La gente** is singular, even though it refers to an idea that seems plural.

frizzante 'sparkling' (of wine)

pesca 'peach'

Exercise 7

As a revision exercise, go over the unit again and make a list of all the words used as greetings and courtesies in the various dialogues. Make sure you understand them and try to learn them.

It is wise to revise when learning. To do Exercise 7 you have to read this unit again. This will help you remember it. It would also be helpful to listen to the recording again. And, very importantly, do this again after each unit. Gradually things, which at first seemed difficult or strange, fall into place and become simple. **Auguri!**

2 Mi chiamo Harry, sono americano, e Lei?

My name's Harry, I'm American, and you?

In this unit you will learn about:

- Giving information about yourself
- Asking others for information about themselves
- Adjectives, singular
- More about nouns, those ending in **-e**
- Verbs in the present tense, singular, first group (infinitive ending in **-are**)
- Saying you like something/like doing something: **mi piace**
- Saying you have to do something: **dovere**
- Saying what you do for a living
- Talking about other people; **lui, lei**; and the form for formal 'you', **Lei**

Dialogue 1

Sono americano, e Lei?

An American businessman is reading the 'International Herald Tribune' as he breakfasts in a hotel in Bologna. An Italian, sitting at the next table, is watching him and eventually leans over.

- 1 Where is the American's home?**
- 2 And the Italian's?**
- 3 What explanation does the American give for his good Italian?**

4 What seems to be the reason for the Italian's interest in the US?

5 Is the Italian pleased to be in Bologna?

- ITALIANO: Mi scusi, signore. Buongiorno. Lei è americano?
- AMERICANO: Buongiorno. Sì, sono americano. Mi chiamo Harry McNamara. Abito a Boston. E Lei?
- ITALIANO: Io sono italiano. Mi chiamo Pietro Mussi. Sono romano, di Roma. Lei parla molto bene l'italiano.
- AMERICANO: Grazie. Mia madre è italiana. E' siciliana. E' di Siracusa.
- ITALIANO: Ah, capisco. Mio fratello abita in America. Abita a Los Angeles. Mi piace molto l'America. E' un paese simpatico e interessante. Lei è in Italia in vacanza o per lavoro?
- AMERICANO: Sono qui per lavoro. E Lei? E' a Bologna per lavoro?
- ITALIANO: Sì, sono qui per lavoro. Vengo spesso a Bologna. Mi piace. E' una città simpatica e interessante. Ora



Bologna: Piazza Maggiore and the Palazzo del Podestà. Courtesy EPT Emilia Romagna.

	mi scusi ma devo andare. Arrivederci a stasera, forse?
AMERICANO:	Sì, sono qui per una settimana. A stasera.
ITALIANO:	Arrivederci. Buona giornata.

Vocabulary

mi chiamo	my name is (lit. 'I call myself')
abito	I live
Lei parla molto bene l'italiano	you speak Italian very well
mia madre	my mother
capisco	I understand
mio fratello	my brother
mi piace	I like
in vacanza	on holiday
per lavoro	for work
vengo spesso	I often come
simpatico	nice, friendly (There is no exact translation. When you say a person or a place is simpatico it means you like them.)
a stasera	see you this evening
forse	perhaps
una settimana	a week
buona giornata	have a nice day

Language point

Adjectives

In Italian adjectives 'agree with the noun they qualify'; that is, if the noun is masculine, the adjective must be in the masculine form; if the noun is feminine, the adjective must be in the feminine form. Look back over Dialogue 1. Underline or highlight all the adjectives you can find or write them on a piece of paper.

You probably picked out: *americano*, *italiano*, *romano*, *italiana*, *siciliana*, *simpatico*, *interessante*.

Look to see which nouns they qualify. You have two men talking who say: **io sono americano**; **io sono italiano**. But Harry says his mother is **italiana**, **siciliana**.

You also had adjectives used to qualify the words **paese** (m.) **simpatico**, **interessante** and **città** (f.) **simpatica**, **interessante**.

Adjectives are of two types.

- 1 The first type ends in **-o/-a**, e.g. **italiano/italiana**, **americano/americana**. A man is **americano**, a woman is **americana**; i.e. the **-o** is the masculine ending and the **-a** is the feminine ending. Many adjectives for nationality are of this sort. *Note*: They are written with a small letter.

<i>Country</i>	<i>Adjective</i>
Australia	australiano/a
Austria	austriaco/a
Brasile	brasiliano/a
Germania	tedesco/a
Gran Bretagna	britannico/a
Messico	messicano/a
Nigeria	nigeriano/a
Spagna	spagnolo/a
Svizzera	svizzero/a
Sud Africa	sudafricano/a

This applies not to only adjectives of nationality, for example: **un paese è simpatico, una città è simpatica**.

- 2 The second group of adjectives in Italian ends in **-e**, for example **interessante**. Many adjectives of nationality, for instance, end in **-e**:

<i>Country</i>	<i>Adjective</i>
Inghilterra	inglese
Irlanda	irlandese
Galles	gallese
Ghana	ghanese
Scozia	scozzese
Canada	canadese
Nuova Zelanda	neozelandese
Francia	francese
Giappone	giapponese
Olanda	olandese (Paesi Bassi = 'the Netherlands')

Note: Many Italians don't understand the difference between British and English. Scots, Welsh and Northern Irish should try not to feel too offended when Italians assume they are English. Americans (and others) should note that America can be **America**, but also **Stati Uniti** 'United States' – see Unit 5. The adjective **statunitense**, derived from **Stati Uniti**, is sometimes heard. The usual word is **americano**.

Now, here's some good news: adjectives that end in an **-e** do not have separate masculine and feminine forms. A man and a woman will both say:

sono { **inglese**
 { **francese**
 { **canadese**

And you can say:

è { **un paese** **interessante**
 { **una città**

Talking of the USA:

è un paese (m.) simpatico e interessante

Talking of Bologna:

è una città (f.) simpatica e interessante

Note: Adjectives usually follow the noun in Italian.

Exercise 1

Say in Italian what nationality you think the following people might be.

Example: **Luciano Pavarotti.**

Answer: **Luciano Pavarotti è italiano.**

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 Sean Connery | 4 Tiger Woods |
| 2 Michael Schumacher | 5 Arnold Schwarzenegger |
| 3 Kofi Annan | 6 Meryl Streep |

Say in Italian which countries you think these cities belong to.

Example: **Los Angeles.**

Answer: **Los Angeles è una città americana.**

7 Roma	10 Toronto
8 New York	11 Sydney
9 Rio de Janeiro	12 Tokyo

Language points

More about nouns: nouns ending in -e

Nouns ending in **-e**, such as **paese**, **madre**, form the third big group of nouns in Italian. The first two are those that end in **-o** (masculine) and those that end in **-a** (feminine). Some nouns in the third group are masculine and some are feminine. Where they relate to people it is easy to guess which gender they are: **madre** 'mother' is feminine; **padre** 'father' is masculine.

But in most cases you have to learn the gender. For example, **paese** is masculine. It helps to learn the noun with an adjective of the **-o/-a** type (which shows gender), e.g. **un paese simpatico**.

More about verbs

In the text you met the following verbs in the first person singular:

io sono mi chiamo abito vengo devo

io was used when the Italian said **io sono italiano** because the Italian man was contrasting his nationality with the American's. In English we would stress the 'I' using our voice. After the first verb it is no longer necessary for him to use **io** because the ending of the verb tells us who the subject is. Can you tell which verb ending indicates **io**? It is **-o**.

When you look up a verb in the dictionary, you will find the *infinitive form*. For very many Italian verbs the infinitive will end in the letters **-are**. Traditionally verbs are grouped according to their infinitive ending and those ending in **-are** form the first group (group 1 verbs). There are three groups in all. In the text you met some verbs of the first group in the first person, that is to say in the 'I' form:

abitare	parlare
abito	parlo

Here are some more:

lavorare	studiare	telefonare	fumare	ballare	cantare
lavoro	studio	telefono	fumo	ballo	canto

Note the first person forms all end in **-o**. This is the first person marker. You can possibly guess at the meaning of them. If not, check in the Glossary.

The **tu** form of verbs always end in **-i**:

lavori	studi	telefoni	fumi	balli	canti
---------------	--------------	-----------------	-------------	--------------	--------------

For **-are** verbs *only*, the **Lei** form ends in **-a**. So you get:

parlare

(io) parlo	I speak, I am speaking
(tu) parli	you speak, you are speaking (familiar)
(Lei) parla	you speak, you are speaking (formal)

Note: The present tense in Italian can translate both the English simple present ('I speak') and the English present continuous ('I am speaking'). So if the forms seem difficult, console yourself with the knowledge that the one tense will do two jobs for you.

You also met some irregular verbs: **sono**, **vengo**, **devo**, and one of a different pattern from the **-are** type: **capisco**. Their infinitives are:

sono	essere	to be
vengo	venire	to come
devo	dovere	to have to, must
capisco	capire	to understand

In Unit 1, you met the forms of **essere**.

There was another verb in Dialogue 1: **mi chiamo**, lit. 'I call myself'. It is used when in English we would say 'my name is . . .' or 'I'm called . ..'. **chiamare** is also an **-are** verb. For the time being, however, don't worry about **mi chiamo**. **chiamo** by itself means 'I call, I am calling'. We will come back to this later.

Exercise 2

Look at the drawings on the facing page and match each with one of the following verbs.

canta	fuma	lavora	telefona	balla	studia
--------------	-------------	---------------	-----------------	--------------	---------------



Imagine you are doing each of these things. How would you say each one?

Example: (io) canto

Exercise 3

Look back at Dialogue 1 and work out how you would say the following in Italian.

- 1 My name is Charlie Hardcastle.
- 2 I am South African.
- 3 I live in Johannesburg.
- 4 I speak English and French.
- 5 My mother is French, from Bordeaux.
- 6 Bordeaux is a nice, friendly city.

mi piace 'I like'

mi piace means, literally, 'it is pleasing to me'; it is the everyday way of saying 'I like':

Mi piace { **la pizza**
Roma
la musica } or *Mi piace* { **parlare italiano**
ballare
studiare }

mi piace can be followed by: (1) a noun ('I like pizza'); or (2) the infinitive of a verb ('I like speaking Italian/to speak Italian'). You have also met **mi dispiace**, which literally means 'it is displeasing to me', but we would normally say 'I am sorry'. It is not the opposite of **mi piace**.

dovere 'to have to do something'

dovere is followed by an infinitive, for example: **devo andare, devo scappare**.

Exercise 4

How would you say you like the following?

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1 working (to work) | 4 Rome |
| 2 New York | 5 speaking Italian |
| 3 singing | 6 Luciano Pavarotti |

Exercise 5

How would you say you have to do the following?

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 1 to telephone | 3 to come |
| 2 to work | 4 to study |

Reading 1 ***Mi chiamo Paolo Bianchi***

An Italian doctor is talking about himself.

- 1 What is the doctor's name?**
- 2 Where does he come from?**

- 3 **Where does he live?**
- 4 **Where does he work?**
- 5 **Can you say something about what he looks like?**
- 6 **Is he married?**
- 7 **What does he like doing in his leisure time?**

Mi chiamo Paolo Bianchi. Sono italiano. Sono di Milano. Sono alto e biondo. Sono medico e lavoro in un ospedale a Milano. Naturalmente abito a Milano. Sono sposato e ho due figli. Mia moglie si chiama Luisa. E' insegnante. Mi piace giocare a tennis, mi piace anche la musica classica.

Vocabulary

alto	tall, high	biondo	fair-haired
sposato	married	figlio	son (figli (pl.) can mean 'sons' or 'sons and daughters')
moglie	wife		

You probably found you could get quite a lot of the information you were asked for. The answers are printed in the 'Key to exercises'.

Language point

Saying what you do for a living

Paolo says **sono medico**. When you say what your job is, the word for the occupation functions as an adjective and so 'a' is usually omitted. You will also hear: **sono un medico**. Here are some other jobs:

albergatore/trice	hotelier	avvocato/tessa	lawyer
casalinga	housewife/ homemaker	commesso/a	shop assistant,
dentista	dentist	cuoco/a	cook
ingegnere	engineer	infermiere/a	nurse
segretario/a	secretary	insegnante	teacher
uomo d'affari	businessman	studente/tessa	student

Note: Some of these words have a masculine and feminine form as indicated. Nouns ending in **-ista** are masculine or feminine

according to the sex of the person described. There are many women lawyers and doctors in Italy but it is not usual to make a feminine form for the words **avvocato** and **medico**. Indeed this is a field in which some women have strong views and feel the feminine form belittles them. As for the feminine for **uomo d'affari**, a businesswoman would call herself ... well, it depends on the precise nature of her work. She might be **una donna-manager**, or simply **manager** (yes, using the English word). If she actually owns a company/companies she could perhaps be **donna d'affari**, but to some people it sounds odd.

Exercise 6

Here is another person's description of himself, but the verbs have been left out. Fill in the gaps using the verbs listed (you may use a verb more than once).

abito sono lavoro

Mi chiamo Silvio, Silvio Mancini. (1) _____ italiano. (2) _____ di Roma. Ma (3) _____ a Firenze. (4) _____ in una banca a Firenze. (5) _____ cassiere. Mi piace il mio lavoro.

Exercise 7

You have just met Giorgio at a reception and he gives you a short portrait of himself. Complete what Giorgio says using the words below (use each word once only).

scusi madre devo sportivo lavoro
chiamo mi abito ospedale giocare

Mi _____ Giorgio. Sono italiano. _____ a Napoli. Mia _____ abita a Roma con mio fratello. Sono medico in un _____ a Napoli. Mi piace il mio _____. Sono _____ e mi piace _____ a golf e a tennis. Mi _____; _____ scappare. _____ dispiace. Arrivederci.

In these passages you met some more adjectives: **sposato**, **alto**, **biondo**. You will notice these adjectives all end in **-o**. Keep an eye open to see what happens when Paolo's wife, Luisa, talks about herself. Don't forget to listen to the recordings as you read.

Reading 2

Mi chiamo Luisa Lucchini

Paolo's wife is talking about herself.

- 1 **What does Luisa teach?**
- 2 **Does she like sports?**
- 3 **Why does she like Milan?**

Mi chiamo Luisa, Luisa Lucchini. Sono italiana. Sono bionda, e sono alta. Sono di Bologna ma abito e lavoro a Milano. Sono insegnante. Lavoro in un liceo e insegno storia e geografia. Sono sposata e ho due figli. Mio marito si chiama Paolo. E' medico e lavora in un ospedale qui a Milano. Io sono sportiva. Mi piace giocare a tennis e a golf. Amo la musica lirica e quando ho tempo mi piace andare alla Scala. Mi piace Milano. E' una città grande, vivace, interessante e stimolante.

Vocabulary

un liceo	a high school, upper secondary school
amo	I love
la musica lirica	opera

Notice that Luisa says:

sono	{	italiana bionda alta
------	---	---

Exercise 8

Match the nouns on the left with the adjectives on the right. Take into account sense and gender (some adjectives can go with more than one word). How many reasonable and grammatically correct combinations can you make?

una birra	vivace
un signore	australiana
un vino	romana
una signora	alto

un lavoro	americano
un paese	sportivo
una madre	interessante
un marito	simpatico
una città	bionda
una signorina	americano
un professore	sposato
un fratello	bianco

You have now learned to give other people some simple, basic information about yourself. It is also useful to be able to do the same about other people.

Dialogue 2

Suo marito, come si chiama?

Luisa Lucchini, the Milanese teacher, is talking to a Canadian tourist in the hotel where they are both spending their holiday. They have talked about themselves. Now they are talking about their husbands.

- 1 What new piece of information do you learn about Paolo's leisure activities?**
- 2 Is the Canadian woman's husband Canadian too?**
- 3 What is his job?**
- 4 Does he enjoy sports?**
- 5 Where do the couple live?**

CANADESE: E Suo marito, come si chiama?

LUISA: Si chiama Paolo.

CANADESE: Che lavoro fa?

LUISA: E' medico. Lavora in un ospedale a Milano.

CANADESE: E come passa il suo tempo libero?

LUISA: E' molto sportivo. Gioca a tennis e ama anche il golf. Gli piace anche la musica classica. Suona il pianoforte. E' molto bravo. Spesso la sera ascolta musica. E Suo marito, come si chiama?

CANADESE: Si chiama Bill. Non è canadese, è scozzese.

LUISA: Che lavoro fa?

CANADESE: Lavora in una banca a Toronto. E' commercialista. La banca è una banca inglese.

- LUISA: E' sportivo, ama lo sport?
 CANADESE: No, non è sportivo. Invece è appassionato per il fai-da-te.
 LUISA: Oh, che bello!
 CANADESE: Dipende!

Vocabulary

che lavoro fa?	what's his job?		
commercialista	accountant, financial adviser (has a degree in economics and business studies)		
ascolta	he listens to	il fai-da-te	do-it-yourself
oh, che bello!	oh, how lovely!	dipende	it depends

Language points

Talking about other people – third person singular of -are verbs; and the formal 'you'

Did you notice the verbs used by Luisa and the Canadian woman to talk about their husbands? They were:

si chiama fa lavora passa è gioca ama suona ascolta

These forms are, as you will realize, the same as those for **Lei**, the formal 'you'. In fact, **lei** is also the word for 'she'. 'He' is **lui** but neither speaker used it. It wasn't necessary, because it was quite clear who they were referring to when they spoke.*

Cultural point

You may be puzzled by the statement that **Lei** is the formal 'you' and **lei** is also 'she'. This use of **Lei** goes back to the days of deference when the people in positions of importance were addressed in the third person rather than directly, for example, 'your excellency's wish is my command'. The initials **SV** or **VS** (for **Signoria Vostra, Vostra Signoria** 'your excellency, your lordship') are still

* In this book we use **Lei** rather than **lei** to clarify that we are not talking about 'she' or 'it' but 'you' (formal).

occasionally to be found in formal invitations and bureaucratic letters. **Lei** is, however, everyday usage for 'you' to people when the relationship is not one of familiarity and you should use it in preference to **tu** when in doubt. It is better to be too formal than too familiar. It is used to men as well as to women, because of the gender of **Signoria**. The confusion with 'she', often feared by learners, is not the problem it at first seems. The deferential origin of the usage probably also accounts for the practice of writing **Lei**, especially in formal letters, with a capital letter.

Present singular of -are verbs; also essere

Now we can see the full singular pattern of an **-are** verb:

(io)	parlo
(tu)	parli
(Lei)	parla
(lui)	parla
(lei)	parla

Il signor Smith parla molto bene l'italiano.

And of **essere**:

(io)	sono
(tu)	sei
(Lei)	è
(lui)	è
(lei)	è

Exercise 9

Pretend to be the following people and talk about yourself.

- 1 A woman with the following attributes: you are Australian; tall and blonde; married; and you work in Sydney.
- 2 You are a Canadian man and you are married. Your wife is English. You live in Milan.
- 3 You are an Italian man. You are Sicilian, from Palermo. Your name is Salvatore. You live in Bologna. You work in a bank. You are married and your wife is Scottish. She is a teacher.

How would you say the same things about someone else?

- 4 She is Australian; tall and blonde; married; and she works in Sydney.
- 5 He is Canadian and he is married; his wife (**sua moglie**) is English; he lives in Milan.
- 6 He is Italian; Sicilian, from Palermo; his name is Salvatore; he lives in Bologna; and he works in a bank; he is married and his wife is Scottish; she is a teacher.

Exercise 10

Try to describe yourself using the words you have met in this unit. This exercise has no set answer, of course – it depends on you. Also try to describe someone else – a friend or member of your family.

3 In città

In town

In this unit you will learn about:

- Finding your way around the sights
- Asking for and understanding directions to specific places
- The definite article, 'the'
- **questo/a** 'this'
- **dove** 'where'; **dov'è** 'where is ...'
- Asking questions
- Negative sentences
- Ordinal numbers
- Present tense singular of second group verbs (infinitive ending in **-ere**)

Dialogue 1

A Perugia

Jack is visiting Perugia, a lively modern city but with roots going back to the Etruscans, whose civilization preceded that of the Romans in Italy. Maria is showing Jack a brochure containing a plan of the city and pictures of some of the sights.

- 1 Can you guess what the Palazzo Comunale is used for?**
- 2 Where do people like to stroll in the evening?**
- 3 Why might you want to go to the garden at the end of Corso Vannucci?**

JACK: Che cos'è questo?

MARIA: Questo è il Palazzo Comunale, il municipio. Si chiama anche il Palazzo dei Priori.

JACK: E' magnifico. E questo?



Palazzo dei Priori and the Fontana Maggiore, Perugia.
Courtesy IAT Perugia.

MARIA: E' la cattedrale.

JACK: (*Pointing to another photo*) Questa è una fontana?

MARIA: Sì. E' la Fontana Maggiore. E' l'opera di Nicola e Giovanni Pisano.

JACK: E' molto bella. E la via, come si chiama?

MARIA: E' Corso Vannucci. E' molto importante per la città. La sera la gente viene qui a fare la passeggiata. In fondo c'è un giardino con un panorama molto bello sulla valle e verso Assisi.

JACK: E questo?

MARIA: Questo è l'Arco Etrusco.

JACK: E il museo famoso, dov'è?

MARIA: La Galleria Nazionale? L'entrata è qui, in Corso Vannucci.

Vocabulary notes

questo/a 'this'

il municipio 'the town hall'

il Palazzo dei Priori 'the Palace of the Priors'. In the Middle Ages, Perugia was a city state; the Priors were the elected officers who governed it.

opera ‘work’ (produced by a creative artist)

la via ‘the street’

la sera ‘the evening’ (here, ‘in the evenings’)

c’è (ci è) ‘there is’

un panorama ‘a view’. A number of nouns ending with **-ma** are masculine. *Hint:* Learn it with an adjective that shows gender, e.g.

un panorama magnifico.

in fondo ‘at the far end, at the bottom’

verso ‘towards’

Cultural point

fare una passeggiata means ‘to go for a walk’, but in much of Italy **fare la passeggiata** is *not* exercise: it is a social event. You walk up and down the main street, stopping to chat to friends, looking at everyone else and generally seeing what is going on. People of all ages do this, so you will see both groups of young people and also their parents. It means you will see your friends frequently and news is passed on quickly!

Language points

The definite article

il for masculine nouns

la for feminine nouns

un palazzo	a palace	un giardino	a garden
il palazzo	the palace	il giardino	the garden
una fontana	a fountain	una via	a street
la fontana	the fountain	la via	the street

Note: For *both* masculine and feminine nouns beginning with a vowel we use **l’** for ‘the’.

un arco	an arch	un’acqua minerale	a water ¹
l’arco	the arch	l’acqua	the water

¹ You say this when ordering a glass of water; it is usual to order spring/mineral water rather than ask for it from the tap.

Note also:

uno scontrino	a till receipt	uno studente	a student
lo scontrino	the till receipt	lo studente	the student

Words that have **uno** for ‘a’, have **lo** for ‘the’ (see Unit 1). This also applies to nouns beginning with **z**, pronounced ‘ts’ or ‘ds’ e.g. **lo zucchero** (‘sugar’).

questo/a

This can be a pronoun or an adjective. When it replaces (as a pronoun) or describes (as an adjective) a feminine noun it becomes **questa**.

Asking questions

Yes/no questions are made simply by using a rising intonation for the last word:

Questa è una fontana.	This is a fountain.
Questa è una fontana?	Is this a fountain?
Harry è americano.	Harry is American.
Harry è americano?	Is Harry American?
Paolo lavora in un ospedale.	Paolo works in a hospital.
Paolo lavora in un ospedale?	Does Paolo work in a hospital?
Giorgio abita a Firenze.	Giorgio lives in Florence.
Giorgio abita a Firenze?	Does Giorgio live in Florence?

You do not need ‘do’ or ‘does’ as in English, nor the word order change which English requires with the verb ‘to be’. Word order is, however, more flexible in Italian than in English, so you will often hear in everyday speech:

E’ una fontana, questa?
E’ americano, Harry?
Lavora in un ospedale, Paolo?
Abita a Firenze, Giorgio?

The first form (i.e. statement with voice raised at the end: **Questa è una fontana?**) should be your model. The answer will normally be either **si** or **no** ‘yes’ or ‘no’.

When asking a question in a way that seems to be expecting confirmation that the information in the question is correct, e.g. ‘You do work in a hospital, don’t you?’, simply tag on to the statement: **vero?** or (sometimes) **non è vero?**:

Lavori in un ospedale, vero?

Questa fontana si chiama la Fontana Maggiore, vero?

Information questions require a question word. The subject, if expressed, follows the verb:

Come si chiama il medico?

What’s the doctor’s name?

(lit. ‘How does the doctor call himself?’)

Che cos’è questo?

What’s this?

Come va Suo marito?

How is your husband?

Question words met so far:

Come?

How?

Come va?

How are you?

Che ...?

Che + noun means ‘which?, what?’

Che lavoro fa?

What is your job?

(lit. ‘What work do you do?’)

Che cosa?

What? (often just **cosa?**)

Note: **Una cosa** means ‘a thing’; so **che cosa** is lit. ‘which, what thing’.

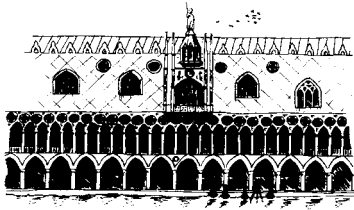
Exercise 1

Look back at the dialogues in Unit 2. Make a list of the questions you find in them.

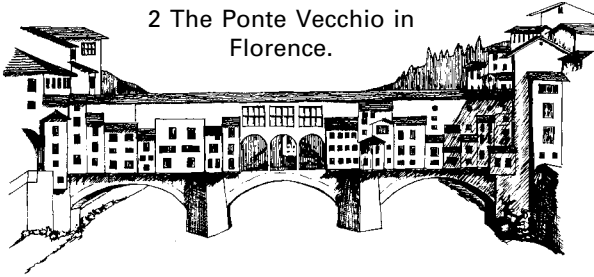
Exercise 2

On the facing page are pictures of some famous places in Italy. For each one there is a question and the answer. Complete the answer with the correct word for ‘the’. If you do not know what the word means, it does not really matter because you can find the correct gender from the **un, una** in the question. Try guessing and then check from the ‘Glossary’.

1 The Doges' Palace in Venice.



2 The Ponte Vecchio in Florence.



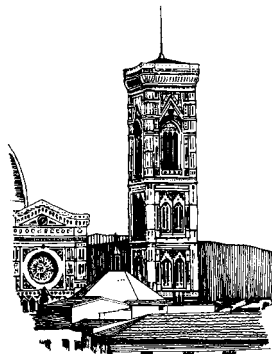
3 The Basilica of San Pietro in Rome.



4 The Leaning Tower of Pisa.



5 The Campanile by Giotto in Florence.



- 1 Questo è un palazzo?
Sì, è _____ Palazzo Ducale a Venezia.
- 2 Questo è un ponte?
Sì, è _____ Ponte Vecchio a Firenze.
- 3 Questa è una basilica?
Sì, è _____ Basilica di San Pietro a Roma.
- 4 Questa è una torre?
Sì, è _____ Torre Pendente di Pisa.
- 5 Questo è un campanile?
Sì, è _____ Campanile di Giotto a Firenze.

Cultural point

Technically the Leaning Tower of Pisa is a **campanile**, the bell tower for the cathedral of Pisa, **il duomo di Pisa**. Cathedrals are sometimes called **cattedrale**, more often **duomo**. The famous Leaning Tower is part of a particularly lovely group of buildings, the **duomo**, the **campanile** and the **battistero** (the baptistery of the cathedral), all by Nicola and Giovanni Pisano, who were also responsible for the Fontana Maggiore in Perugia.

Vocabulary

More town vocabulary: the first group is very easy to guess, but use the ‘Glossary’ to check or if you cannot guess.

aeroporto	ambasciata	banca
cinema (m.)	consolato	farmacia
galleria	pizzeria	ristorante (m.)
stazione (f.)	supermercato	teatro
ufficio postale		

The following are more difficult to guess:

albergo	hotel
cambio	foreign currency exchange
chiesa	church
mercato	market
fermata dell'autobus	bus stop

Dialogue 2

C'è una banca qui vicino?

A tourist needs to change some money. He stops a passer-by.

1 What does the tourist ask for first?

2 The passer-by suggests he goes to a foreign exchange bureau. Why?

TURISTA: Scusi, c'è una banca qui vicino?

PASSANTE: Una banca, sì. E' in Piazza Garibaldi.

TURISTA: Dov'è Piazza Garibaldi? E' lontano?

PASSANTE: No, è qui vicino. Vede l'albergo Bristol? (*pointing down the road*)

TURISTA: Sì.

PASSANTE: Piazza Garibaldi è subito dopo, sulla sinistra.

TURISTA: Grazie. E' aperta la banca a quest'ora?

PASSANTE: Penso di no. Lei deve cambiare valuta o travellers cheques?

TURISTA: Sì, travellers cheques.

PASSANTE: C'è un ufficio di cambio lì, sulla destra, subito dopo la farmacia.

TURISTA: Oh, grazie. Buongiorno.

PASSANTE: Prego. Buongiorno.

Vocabulary

vicino	near
lontano	far
qui	here
qui vicino	near here
vede l'albergo?	do you see the hotel?
lì	there
aperto	open
penso di no	I think not, I don't think so
valuta	currency
subito	immediately, suddenly
dopo	after
sulla sinistra	on the left
sulla destra	on the right

Exercise 3

Make the question you need in the following circumstances, using a sentence on the pattern of: **C'è una banca qui vicino?**

- 1 You are hungry and want something to eat.
- 2 You have a headache and want to buy something for it.
- 3 It's getting late and you realize you are going to have to spend the night in this town.
- 4 You're tired of walking and want to get a bus to your destination.
- 5 You need to do some food shopping.

Language point

Using dove and dov'è 'where, where is'

You may need to look for a specific place, not *a* bank but *the* bank you want to use. You will need to ask **dov'è** 'where is'.

Note:

dove	stress the first syllable	where
dov'è (dove è)	stress on the è	where is

Dialogue 3

Scusi, dov'è il consolato americano?

Our tourist has lost his passport and needs the consulate. He stops another passer-by.

- **Where is the American Consulate?**

- TURISTA: Mi scusi, Lei sa dov'è il consolato americano?
 PASSANTE: Mi dispiace, non lo so. Ma c'è l'Azienda per il Turismo in Via Mazzini. Provi a chiedere lì.
 TURISTA: E dov'è Via Mazzini?
 PASSANTE: E' la seconda via a destra. L'Azienda per il Turismo è sulla sinistra.
 TURISTA: Grazie. Buongiorno.
 PASSANTE: Prego. Buongiorno.

Vocabulary

Lei sa	do you know?
non lo so	I don't know (lit. 'I don't know it')
provi a chiedere	try asking

Language points

Negative sentences

To make a sentence negative, put **non** before the verb:

Jane è americana.	Jane is American.
Jane non è americana.	Jane isn't American.
Piero abita a Milano.	Piero lives in Milan.
Piero non abita a Milano.	Piero doesn't live in Milan.
Mi piace New York.	I like New York.
Non mi piace New York.	I don't like New York.
Capisco.	I understand.
Non capisco.	I don't understand.

In the last dialogue you met **non lo so**. You can say **non so** but Italians usually say:

lo so I know (it)	non lo so I don't know (it)
--------------------------	------------------------------------

So is from **sapere**, an irregular verb.

Note: Do not confuse **no** (which means 'no') and **non** (which is used with a verb to make a negative sentence).

Exercise 4

Vero o falso? Read the following statements and say whether they are true or false.

- 1 New York non è in Irlanda.
- 2 Luciano Pavarotti non è biondo.
- 3 Roma non è una città interessante e bella.
- 4 Il Teatro alla Scala non è a Milano.
- 5 Assisi non è lontano da Perugia.

Which of the following are true for you?

- 6 Non sono americano/a.
- 7 Non abito in Italia.
- 8 Non sono sposato/a.
- 9 Non parlo francese.
- 10 Non lavoro in una banca.
- 11 Non mi piace il fai-da-te.
- 12 Per me, questo esercizio è molto difficile.

Exercise 5

Someone is pestering you with questions. The answer to them all is 'no'. You feel a bit irritated by the onslaught so answer them, stressing the 'no' answer by giving the full sentence in the negative. You may find it helpful to look back to Unit 2 and check the 'you' and 'I' verb endings.

Example: **Lei fuma?**

Answer: **No, non fumo.**

- 1 Lei lavora qui?
- 2 Abita in questa città?
- 3 E' qui in vacanza?
- 4 E' americano/a?
- 5 Parla francese?

Ordinal numbers

You know the numbers 1 to 10 (Unit 1). Here are the corresponding ordinal numbers. The abbreviated way of writing each is given in brackets.

first	primo	(1 ^o)
second	secondo	(2 ^o)
third	terzo	(3 ^o)
fourth	quarto	(4 ^o)
fifth	quinto	(5 ^o)
sixth	sesto	(6 ^o)
seventh	settimo	(7 ^o)
eighth	ottavo	(8 ^o)
ninth	nono	(9 ^o)
tenth	decimo	(10 ^o)

After **decimo**, take off the final vowel from a given number and add: **-esimo**, for example:

twentieth	ventesimo	(20 ^o)
thirtieth	trentesimo	(30 ^o)
forty-ninth	quarantanesimo	(49 ^o)

Ordinal numbers are adjectives and agree with the noun they refer to:

il primo giorno	the first day
la prima sera	the first evening

Directions for finding places

The general word for 'street' is **strada**. However, when streets are named, they are usually called **via**, e.g. **via Cavour**. **Strada Rosero** would be a name used in a rural area and would indicate where the road *leads to*. Streets are often named after important historical figures, events or even dates. **corso** means a particularly important street, **viale** (m.) a wide, tree-lined street. **una piazza** is a square, **un piazzale** a large square.

Question: Dov'è la Banca Popolare?

è

qui
lì

 sulla

destra
sinistra

 it's

here
there

 on the

right
left

You may be told to take:

la

prima
seconda

 a

destra
sinistra

 the

first
second

right
left

Often you will be told what you *have to do* (see Unit 1):

Lei deve prendere la seconda sulla sinistra.

You have to take the second on the left.

Lei deve girare a destra.

You have to turn right.

You may hear:

Prenda la quarta a sinistra.

Take the fourth left.

Giri a destra qui e poi è sempre dritto.

Turn right here and then it's straight on.

These last two forms are 'commands' (imperatives), such as **dica**, **scusi**, **provi**. More about them soon.

Another way of posing a question is: **Per la stazione, per favore?**

If you want *a* supermarket, *a* bank etc., that is *any* one rather than a specific one, you say:

C'è un supermercato/una banca qui vicino?

Vocabulary

Here is a summary of vocabulary for giving directions:

dov'è . . .	where is . . .
per . . .	(roughly) what is the way to . . .
a destra/sulla destra	to the right, on the right
a sinistra/sulla sinistra	to the left, on the left
poi	then, next
sempre dritto (or dritto)	straight on
in fondo	at the end, at the bottom
dopo (il cinema, il museo ecc.)	after (the cinema, the museum etc.)
prima di (prima della chiesa)	before (before the church)
accanto a (accanto al palazzo)	next to (next to the palace)
dietro	behind
davanti a	in front of
di fronte a	opposite
oltre	beyond
è lontano?	is it far?
vicino	near
è a 100 metri	it's 100 metres (100 yards approx.) away
è a 5 minuti	it's 5 minutes away
a piedi	on foot
in macchina	by car
fino a	as far as
il semaforo	the traffic lights

Hint: When you are given directions, it is a good idea to repeat the main points to the person who gave them, e.g. **seconda a sinistra, poi sulla destra**. In this way you can check you have understood and it also helps you to memorize what was said.

More verbs, present tense singular: verbs with an infinitive ending in -ere

You have already met the verbs ending in **-are**. A second group have an infinitive ending in **-ere**:

vedere (to see)	(io) vedo (tu) vedi (lui) vede (lei)
prendere (to take)	(io) prendo (tu) prendi (lui) prende (lei)
chiedere (to ask)	(io) chiedo (tu) chiedi (lui) chiede (lei)

They differ very little from the **-are** verbs, however the third person singular has **-e** where the first group has **-a**. Other verbs you have met that belong to this group are commonly used only in the third person singular:

piacere	dipendere
piace	dipende

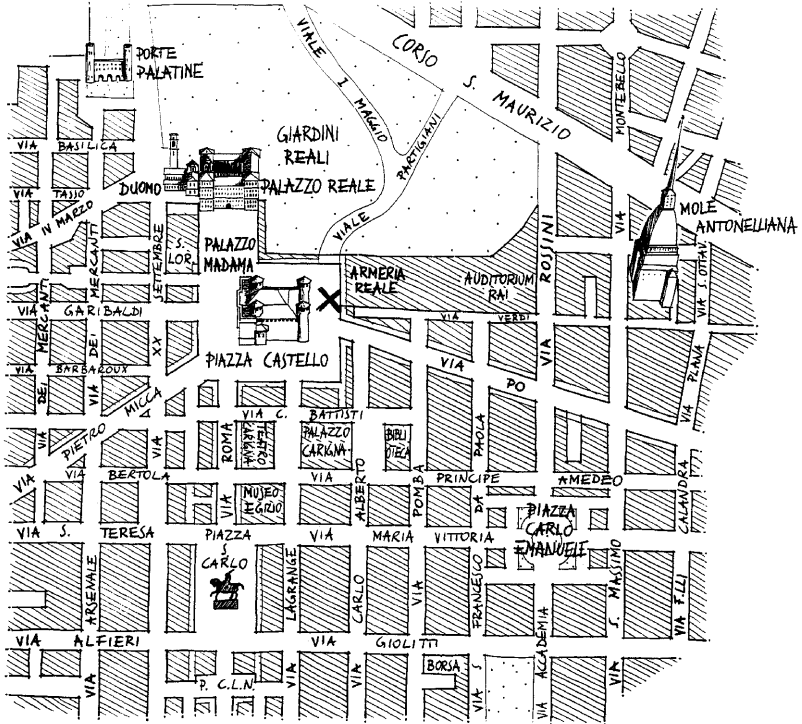
piacere ‘to be pleasing’ is not a regular verb, but few parts of it are used frequently. **Dovere** ‘to have to’ is also an irregular verb but it follows the **-ere** pattern for the present tense singular endings, although the stem (the first part) changes:

devo
devi
deve

One further point about **-ere** verbs. Some have the stress on the first **e** of the infinitive, some on the previous syllable: **vedere** but **prendere**. This has no bearing on any other part of the verb. Where stress is on the antepenultimate syllable, this is given in the Glossary. When in doubt, check in a dictionary where the stress should fall.

Exercise 6

A map of the centre of Torino is shown below. You are standing at the spot marked X. Follow the instructions given and work out where you get to.



- 1 Prenda Via Po, qui, sulla nostra sinistra. Vada sempre dritto sotto i portici, sul lato sinistro, fino alla quarta via sulla sinistra: Via Montebello. Ed è lì in Via Montebello, sulla destra, dopo il cinema Massimo.
- 2 Allora, lei deve girare la piazza verso sinistra e prendere Via Roma. Vede, è lì, sulla sinistra. Proseguia per Via Roma, sotto i portici, e arriva in _____.
- 3 Lei deve fare il giro della piazza verso destra poi sulla destra trova il cortile di Palazzo Reale. Attraversi il cortile diagonalmente, verso sinistra. Passi sotto l'arco; arriva in una via stretta ed è lì sulla destra.

Exercise 7

Work out how to explain to an Italian how to get to your home/place of work from the bus stop/railway station/motorway exit (**uscita**).

Example: **L'uscita è 'corso Marconi'. Sempre dritto per 200 metri; al secondo semaforo, a sinistra, e poi la prima sulla destra. La casa è sulla sinistra, il numero 23.**

Exercise 8

Here are some sentences and, shown separately, some verbs. Can you pick the correct verb in the correct form to complete the sentence? Use each verb once only.

**abito abita chiama chiedo chiedere dipende
lavora piace prenda prendi vedi vedo**

- 1 Io non _____ la banca. Dov'è?
- 2 Non so se vengo. _____ dal mio lavoro.
- 3 Devo _____ la strada. Non _____ in questa città e non so dov'è il duomo.
- 4 _____ la terza sulla sinistra e il museo è lì.
- 5 Un attimo. _____ a questo signore se la banca è qui vicino.
- 6 Il mio amico _____ a Milano, proprio in centro.
- 7 Mi _____ molto la fontana. E' bella.
- 8 Questo Palazzo si _____ il Palazzo Pubblico. E' molto antico.
- 9 Carlo _____ al museo di arte moderna. E' un lavoro molto interessante.
- 10 Ecco il bar Roma. Tu _____ Enzo? Deve essere qui. Ah sì. Ciao, Enzo. Cosa _____?

Reading

A Roma

- 1 **What is the origin of the name of Palazzo Venezia?**
- 2 **Why do you think the Museum of Italian Unification is in the Vittoriano?**
- 3 **Why was the Campidoglio important in Ancient Rome?**
- 4 **Why do you think the Via dei Fori Imperiali is so called?**
- 5 **Between which two Piazze does Via del Corso run?**

Siamo a Roma. La piazza in primo piano è Piazza Venezia. Sulla destra c'è Palazzo Venezia, in passato residenza degli ambasciatori di Venezia, oggi un museo. Davanti a noi, c'è il Vittoriano, il monumento al re Vittorio Emanuele II, il primo re d'Italia dopo l'unificazione nel 1861. Qui si trova anche l'Altare della Patria e la tomba del Milite Ignoto. All'interno del Vittoriano c'è il Museo del Risorgimento. Oltre questo monumento si trova il Campidoglio, il centro religioso della Roma antica e ancora oggi il cuore della città.

Alla sinistra del Vittoriano c'è Via dei Fori Imperiali e in fondo il Colosseo. A destra e a sinistra di questa via ci sono i ruderi del Foro Romano. Di fronte al Vittoriano, in primo piano, c'è l'inizio della famosa Via del Corso, la strada principale della città. Lunga più di un chilometro, finisce in Piazza del Popolo.



Piazza Venezia and the Monument to Vittorio Emanuele.
Courtesy APT di Roma.

Vocabulary

il re	the king
il Milite Ignoto	the Unknown Soldier
il Risorgimento	the name given to the nineteenth-century movement for Italian unity
i ruderi	ruins

Cultural point

Vittorio Emanuele II was the first king of the united Italy but the second Victor Emanuel of the kingdom of Sardinia. The kingdom, which originally included Savoy, encompassed Piedmont as well as the island of Sardinia, and its capital was Turin. It was the prime mover for the unity of the peninsula, through its Prime Minister, Count Cavour, the romantic patriot, Garibaldi, and Victor Emanuel II.

4 In viaggio

Travelling

In this unit you will learn about:

- Travelling – by train, bus, air
- **ogni** 'every'
- Numbers 11 to 19
- Years: how to say, e.g. 1492, 2005
- Telling the time
- Verbs with infinitives in **-ire** (singular), third group
- Relative pronouns (the man who . . . , the book which . . .)
- Using **proprio** 'exactly'; **un po'/poco** 'a little'
- Impersonal/unspecified **si**

Dialogue 1

Devo andare a Torino

*While in Milan, Angela Smith needs to go to Turin for a day. She enquires at the Milan Central Station (**Milano–Stazione Centrale**) about the journey.*

- 1 What sort of train does the Interregionale seem to be?**
- 2 And the Eurostar?**
- 3 How much, in total, does Angela's ticket cost?**
- 4 What would it have cost in first class?**

IMPIEGATO: Buongiorno, dica.

SMITH: Buongiorno. Devo andare a Torino. Posso fare l'andata e il ritorno in una giornata?

IMPIEGATO: Certo, signora. C'è un treno quasi ogni ora e ci mette più o meno due ore. A che ora vuole partire?

- SMITH: Verso le otto.
 IMPIEGATO: Allora, c'è un treno che parte alle 8.20. Arriva a Torino alle 10.30.
 SMITH: E' un rapido?
 IMPIEGATO: No, è un Interregionale. C'è l'Eurostar che parte alle 8.15 che arriva a Torino alle 9.33 ma che naturalmente costa di più. Però l'Eurostar ci mette solo 1 ora e 20 minuti.
 SMITH: Benissimo. Prendo quello. E' necessario prenotare per domani?
 IMPIEGATO: Sì, è obbligatorio.
 SMITH: E per tornare? Vorrei essere a Milano prima delle venti.
 IMPIEGATO: C'è un Eurostar ogni ora, alle 14.07, alle 16.15, alle 17.07, e alle 18.15.
 SMITH: Perfetto. Prendo quello delle 17.07.
 IMPIEGATO: Quello delle 17.07 ferma a Vercelli e Novara e ci mette 10 minuti in più.
 SMITH: Va bene. Mi dia un'andata e ritorno per domani.
 IMPIEGATO: Prima o seconda classe?
 SMITH: Quanto costa?
 IMPIEGATO: In prima classe 20 euro all'andata e in seconda 15 euro. Il ritorno costa lo stesso.
 SMITH: Preferisco la seconda classe.
 IMPIEGATO: Allora, 30 euro in tutto.
 SMITH: Va bene.

Vocabulary

andare	to go
posso ...?	can I ...?
in una giornata	in a day
quasi	almost
più o meno	more or less
a che ora vuole partire?	at what time do you want to leave?
verso	at about
quello	that one
tornare	to come back
domani	tomorrow
vorrei ...	I'd like, I should like ...
ferma a Vercelli ...	it stops at Vercelli ...

Language point

ogni 'every'

ogni ora	every hour
giorno	day
dieci minuti	ten minutes

Ogni quanto c'è un treno per Torino?

How often do the trains for Turin run?

(lit. 'every how much?')

Vocabulary

Il treno

Orario (dei treni)	the (train) timetable
biglietto (di andata e ritorno)	a (return) ticket
andata	outward journey
ritorno	return
biglietteria	ticket office
fare il biglietto	to buy a ticket
dove devo cambiare?	where do I have to change?
arrivo	arrival
partenza	departure
prenotare, prenotazione	to book a seat, booking (sometimes obligatory on fast trains)
binario	track (the platform trains leave from is given as binario . . .)
da che binario parte il treno per Verona?	which platform does the train for Verona leave from?
un viaggiatore	a traveller
viaggiare	to travel
il treno è in orario	the train is on time
anticipo	early
ritardo	late
partenza	leaving
arrivo	arriving

Cultural point

Italian Railways are nowadays called Trenitalia, although you will see the old name Ferrovie dello Stato and initials FFSS. It is quite

easy now to check train times and book on line (www.trenitalia.com) and a ticket bought that way is called: **ticketless**, using the English term. Eurostar, Intercity, Interregionale are types of train, in ascending order of the number of stops they make and therefore increased journey times.

Numbers 11 to 19

We can't put it off any longer! You need to learn the remaining numbers, 11 to 19. If necessary, remind yourself of the numbers in Unit 1. The numbers 11 to 19 are perhaps the most difficult for the learner. They divide into two groups according to the way they are formed:

- 11 **undici**
- 12 **dodici**
- 13 **tredici**
- 14 **quattordici**
- 15 **quindici**
- 16 **sedici**
- 17 **diciassette**
- 18 **diciotto**
- 19 **diciannove**

You will recognize part of each word as being similar to **dieci** (10) but in the first group that part comes at the end and in the second group at the beginning of the word. Notice too that the stress of the first group falls on the third syllable from the end.

The numbers 11 to 19 can all be turned into ordinals by the addition of **-esimo**, e.g.:

- quattordicesimo**
- diciottesimo**

Exercise 1

Here are some addresses. How would you say the house numbers?

Example: **Via Tiziano 11.**

Answer: **Undici.**

- 1 Corso Vittorio Emanuele 18
- 2 Via Mazzini 17

- 3 Via San Francesco 12
 4 Piazza della Repubblica 19
 5 Corso Cavallotti 16

Exercise 2

Work out how to say these famous dates in history in Italian. *Note:* In Italian you always say: **millenovecento** . . ., i.e. ‘one thousand nine hundred . . .’ and not ‘nineteen hundred . . .’

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 1215 | 2 1492 | 3 1789 | 4 1815 |
| 5 1848 | 6 1918 | 7 1946 | 8 2005 |

Telling the time

Che ora è? Che ore sono?

To ask someone ‘what’s the time?’ you can say either **che ora è?** or **che ore sono?**. **ora** means ‘hour’, and its plural is **ore**.

E’ l’una	It’s one o’clock
Sono le due	It’s two o’clock
Sono le tre	It’s three o’clock
... e così via	... and so on

But at 12 noon and 12 midnight respectively:

E’ mezzogiorno
E’ mezzanotte

For minutes past, you simply use **e**:

Sono le cinque e cinque	It’s five past five
dieci	ten
venti	twenty
venticinque	twenty-five

and for minutes to, **meno**:

Sono le sei meno venticinque	It’s twenty-five to six
venti	twenty
dieci	ten
cinque	five

For quarters and halves:

**Sono le cinque e un quarto
le cinque e mezzo
le sei meno un quarto**

It's a quarter past five
half past five
a quarter to six

**E' mezzogiorno e un quarto
e mezzo
meno un quarto**

It's a quarter past twelve
half past twelve
a quarter to twelve

When giving the times of trains, flights etc. Italians use the 24-hour clock, which avoids the possibility of misunderstanding:

Il treno parte alle sedici e cinquanta.

The train leaves at 16.50.

Note also that when you are saying 'at 16.50' the **a** ('at') combines with **le** or **P**:

**Parto all'una
alle due**

I'm leaving at one
at two

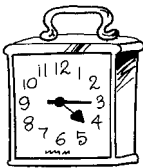
More about this later.

Exercise 3

What times are the clocks showing? Use the conversational way of telling the time.

Example: **Sono le dieci e venticinque.**

1



2



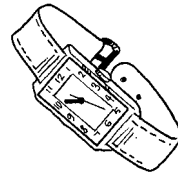
3



4



5



Exercise 4

Say at what time you:

- 1 get up
- 2 leave for work
- 3 have lunch
- 4 finish work
- 5 arrive home

Verbs ending in -ire

Angela used **preferisco**. You have already met **capisco**. The third group of verbs in Italian has an infinitive ending in **-ire**. In the present tense, but not in most other tenses, this group of verbs divides into two sub-groups.

(1)	<i>capire</i>	<i>preferire</i>	<i>finire</i>
(io)	capisco	preferisco	finisco
(tu)	capisci	preferisci	finisci
(Lei/lui/lei)	capisce	preferisce	finisce
(2)	<i>partire</i>	<i>dormire</i>	<i>sentire</i>
(io)	parto	dormo	sento
(tu)	parti	dormi	senti
(Lei/lui/lei)	parte	dorme	sente

The second sub-group has the same endings as **-ere** verbs, while the first have an extra syllable: **-isc-**. Try to learn, as you go along, which group each type of **-ire** verb belongs to.

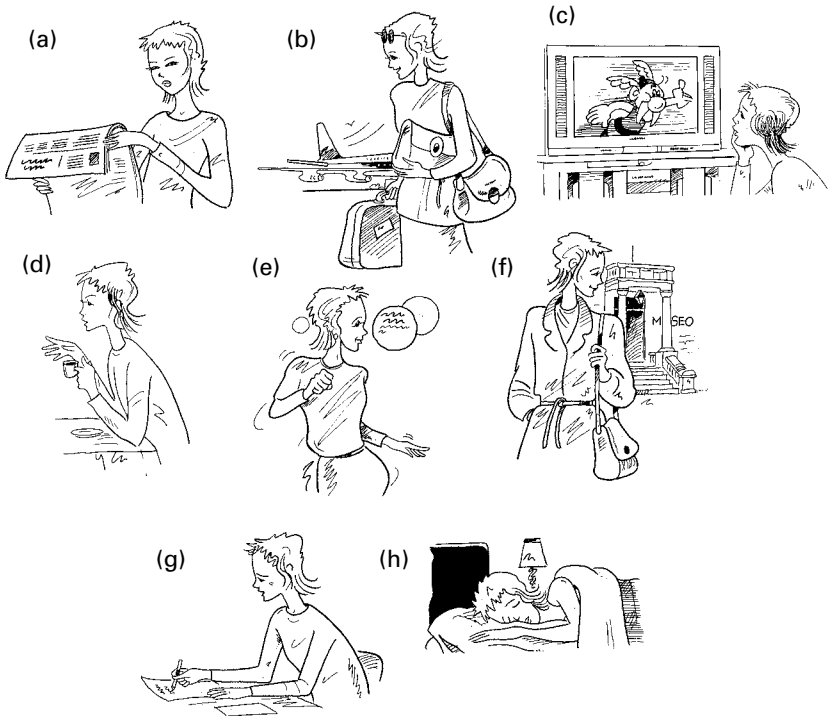
You have now seen the forms for the singular of all regular verbs in Italian. Verb tables often look daunting but study the summary table below carefully and you will see that the differences between the groups are small.

<i>-are</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>-ire (1)</i>	<i>-ire (2)</i>
-o	-o	-isco	-o
-i	-i	-isci	-i
-a	-e	-isce	-e

Don't forget, the Italian present can express the meaning of both the English simple present ('I speak') and also the English present continuous ('I am speaking').

Exercise 5

Here are pictures of Carla doing various things. Match each drawing with one of the sentences in the list below.



- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Carla balla in discoteca | 5 Carla legge il giornale |
| 2 visita un museo | 6 scrive una lettera |
| 3 prende un caffè | 7 parte per le vacanze |
| 4 guarda la TV | 8 dorme |

How would you say *you* were doing each of these actions? You need to change the endings of the verbs to the **io** form.

Example: Ballo in discoteca.

Exercise 6

Giorgio has been telling you about himself. Tell someone else what he said, i.e. rewrite his words so that you are talking about him, changing the endings of the verbs from the 'I' form to the 'he' form.

Example: **Giorgio è pilota.**

Sono (1) pilota. *Abito* (2) a Verona e *lavoro* (3) per una compagnia privata. Spesso *devo* (4) portare gente a Roma o a Bruxelles. Generalmente *parto* (5) da Verona presto e *arrivo* (6) a Roma per le 9. La sera *torno* (7) a Verona e *finisco* (8) di lavorare alle 18 o alle 19. Se non è possibile tornare *dormo* (9) all'albergo, ma *preferisco* (10) tornare a Verona. Ma non *decido* (11) *io*, decide il cliente.

Saying how long something takes

Ci mette is used to say how long it takes:

Il treno ci mette due ore.

The train takes two hours.

Per fare questo, ci metto mezz'ora.

To do this, I take half an hour.

Mettere in other contexts means 'to put' and works like **prendere** in the present tense.

Dialogue 2

Vorrei andare in Piazza Castello

In Torino Angela wants to go to Piazza Castello. It is raining as she gets off the train so she thinks she'll take the bus. She finds a bus information office in the station.

- 1 If Angela takes the number 63, does it take her right to Piazza Castello?
- 2 Where does she have to get off?
- 3 Which bus will take her right into Piazza Castello?

- ANGELA: Buongiorno. Vorrei andare in Piazza Castello. Che autobus devo prendere?
- IMPIEGATO: Può prendere il 4, il 12 o il 63. Scende in Via XX Settembre dietro il duomo. Trova una piccola via che la porta in Piazza Castello.
- ANGELA: Dov'è la fermata?
- IMPIEGATO: E' in Via Sacchi, accanto alla stazione.
- ANGELA: Non c'è un autobus che mi porti proprio in Piazza Castello?
- IMPIEGATO: C'è il 15, che deve prendere in Via XX Settembre. La lascia proprio in Piazza Castello.
- ANGELA: Sembra un po' difficile. E piove. Dove posso trovare un taxi?

Vocabulary

può	you can	scende	you get off
la lascia	it leaves you	sembra un po'	it seems a bit
piove	it's raining	difficile	difficult
trovare	find		

Language points

Using che as an interrogative adjective or pronoun

The word **che** has a number of uses, one of which is to make a question (*interrogative adjective or pronoun*):

- Che autobus devo prendere?** Which bus must I take?
Che ora è? What time is it?
Che cosa devo fare? What must I do?

Using che as a relative pronoun

Another use is to show the relationship between a noun followed by a phrase and the main part of the sentence (*relative pronoun*):

- Trova una piccola via che la porta in Piazza Castello.**
 You'll find a little street which takes you into Piazza Castello.

As a relative pronoun (e.g. in the last example), **che** can refer to people or things, and be the subject or object of the clause it introduces. In this it differs from, and is easier than, both English and French.

- People as subject:

L'amica che viene stasera abita proprio in Piazza Castello.

The friend who is coming this evening lives right in Piazza Castello.

- People as object:

Giorgio è una persona che conosco bene.

Giorgio is a person (who) I know well.

- Things as subject:

Tu vedi il taxi che arriva?

Do you see (can you see) the taxi that is arriving?

L'Albergo Londra che è in Via Londra è molto famoso.

The Hotel Londra which is in Via Londra is very famous.

- Things as object:

Il libro che cerco è di un amico.

The book (that) I am looking for belongs to a friend.

Using proprio 'exactly'

This is an adverb meaning 'exactly, really, indeed, right, just'.

Arrivi proprio al momento giusto.

You are arriving (have come) exactly at the right moment.

Abita proprio in centro.

He lives right in the centre.

Sei proprio gentile.

You really are kind.

Using un po' 'a little'

un po' is a very commonly used abbreviation for **un poco** 'a little'.

Vuole un po' di vino?

Would you like a little wine?

Parla italiano?

Do you/does he/she speak Italian?

Un po'

A little

poco without **un** can also be an *adverb*:

Legge poco.

He reads little (i.e. he doesn't read very much).

Dorme poco.

He doesn't sleep very much.

E' poco simpatico.

He's not very nice.

It can also be an *adjective*:

poca gente

few people, not very many people

Reading 1

Come si fa a prendere l'autobus?

- 1 Where do you usually buy bus tickets?**
- 2 Is the cost related to the distance travelled?**
- 3 Why might the foreigner find travelling by bus more pleasant than driving?**

Quando si prende l'autobus in Italia, occorre generalmente acquistare il biglietto prima di salire. Di solito questo si fa dal tabaccaio, dal giornalaio, al bar o in qualsiasi posto dove si vede un cartello che annuncia la vendita dei biglietti. Salendo sull'autobus, occorre obliterare il biglietto con la macchinetta. Nelle città generalmente si paga lo stesso prezzo per qualsiasi percorso, senza badare alla distanza. Però è meglio informarsi sul posto del sistema in vigore. Viaggiare in autobus è un modo simpatico e qualche volta anche divertente per conoscere una città, a contatto con la gente e senza il problema di trovare un parcheggio una volta arrivati a destinazione. E costa relativamente poco. Di solito è più economico acquistare un blocchetto di dieci biglietti che un biglietto solo. Chi sale senza biglietto paga una multa.

Vocabulary

occorre	it is necessary to, you need to	acquistare	to purchase, buy
di solito	usually	prima di salire	before getting on
dal giornalaio	at the newsagent's	dal tabaccaio	at the tobacconist's
un cartello	a sign, a notice	in qualsiasi	in any place
la vendita	the sale	posto	
macchinetta	little machine	salendo	as you get on
senza badare a	regardless of	si paga lo	you pay the same
è meglio	it's better to	stesso prezzo	price
informarsi	find out (inform oneself)	sul posto	on the spot, in the place
qualche volta	sometimes	un modo	a way
una multa	a fine	un parcheggio	a parking place, a car park

Language points

salire/scendere *'to get on/off'*

'To get on' (e.g. a bus) is **salire** and 'to get off' is **scendere**. These verbs are also used to refer to getting into and out of other vehicles. The literal meanings are 'to go up' and 'to go down', respectively. **scendere** is a regular verb, **-ere** type. **salire** is irregular.

Scusi, per il duomo, dove devo scendere?

Excuse me, for the cathedral, where should I get off?

Using chi

chi, like **che**, has more than one use. It can mean 'who?' when asking questions:

Chi vuole venire con me?

Who wants to come with me?

Chi è?

Who is it?

It can also be used, as in this passage, to mean 'the person who, those who, anyone who':

chi sale senza biglietto

anyone who gets on without a ticket

This is much used in proverbs. In English we would say ‘he who’:

Chi va piano, va sano e va lontano.

(lit. ‘He who goes slowly, goes safely and a long way.’)

In other words: ‘More haste, less speed.’

It can also mean ‘some . . . others’:

Per andare a Roma c’è chi preferisce l’aereo, chi la propria macchina, chi il treno.

For going to Rome, some prefer to travel by air, others to use their own car and others the train.

Impersonal (unspecified) si

There were a number of examples of this in the last passage. **si** has more than one meaning and a very common and useful one is ‘one’ as in ‘one does such and such’, i.e. in generalizations. In English we often say ‘you’ or ‘they’ instead, or use the passive: e.g. ‘How do you/they do it?’, ‘How is it done?’ This is often called impersonal **si** in grammar books, but it does refer to a person, albeit an undefined, unspecified person.

Come si fa a prendere l’autobus?

How does one go about taking the bus?

Note: You can also say:

Come si fa per . . . andare alla stazione?

Can you pick out the other cases of **si** in the text?

Here are some common and useful phrases with **si**:

Come si dice in italiano *useful*?

What is the Italian for *useful*?

(lit. ‘How does one say . . .’)

Come si { **scrive**
pronuncia } **questa parola?**

How is this word { written?
pronounced?

Qui si parla inglese.

English is spoken here.

Si può parcheggiare qui?

Can one/you park here?

Si mangia bene e si paga poco.

The food is good and it's not expensive. (e.g. of a restaurant)
(lit. 'One eats well and one pays little.')

Using qualsiasi 'any'

qualsiasi means 'any' in the sense of 'it doesn't matter which', 'whichever'.

qualsiasi percorso	any journey
qualsiasi paese	any country
qualsiasi cosa	anything (in positive sentences)

Reading 2 **L'aeroporto**

- 1 Why is travelling by air so easy for English-speaking travellers?**
- 2 In what case are announcements made in English as well as Italian?**

Viaggiare in aereo, per una persona di madre-lingua inglese, è facile. Perché? Perché l'aeroporto è un posto dove si usa molto la lingua inglese. Questo è vero anche per l'aereo. E il personale capisce sempre l'inglese. In genere tutto viene annunciato in inglese e in italiano, soprattutto per i voli diretti verso un paese in cui la lingua principale è l'inglese. Il vocabolario poi non è difficile. Il viaggiatore prende un *volo*; c'è anche un verbo, *volare*. Il volo *parte* da un aeroporto e *arriva* in un altro. Per la *partenza* il viaggiatore deve prima fare il 'check-in', poi deve passare per l'esame elettronico del bagaglio e il *controllo dei passaporti*. Poi va a una precisa *porta* o *uscita*, da dove sale sull'aereo. Esattamente come in tutti gli aeroporti del mondo.

Vocabulary

perché?	why?	un volo	a flight
perché	because	mondo	world
soprattutto	especially, above all		

5 Vorrei comprare/ Quanto costa?

I'd like to buy/How much does
it cost?

In this unit you will learn about:

- Shopping for various items, asking how much something costs
- Comparing one thing with another
- 'False friends'
- Asking if you may do something, saying you want to or have to do something
- Saying what you would like, and what you could or ought to do
- **si può?** Asking whether something is possible
- The plurals of nouns, adjectives and definite articles
- **questo e quello** 'this and that'
- The plural subject and strong pronouns ('we, they')
- The plurals of regular verbs and some irregular ones

Dialogue 1

Vorrei una guida

Joe has just arrived in Florence and he wants to start exploring, but first he needs a guidebook and a good map. He goes into a likely-looking bookshop.

1 What type of guidebook does Joe choose?

2 Is he offered a choice of maps?

COMMESSA: Buongiorno, signore. Desidera?

JOE: Vorrei una guida della città.

- COMMESSA: In italiano o in inglese?
 JOE: Preferisco l'inglese, se è possibile.
 COMMESSA: Ecco. C'è questa, illustrata. E' molto bella. E c'è anche questa, tascabile. E' più pratica, forse.
 JOE: Posso vedere? Infatti, ha ragione. La guida piccola è più pratica. Quanto costa?
 COMMESSA: 12 euro, signore.
 JOE: Va bene. Prendo questa.
 COMMESSA: Altro, signore?
 JOE: Sì. Vorrei anche una pianta della città.
 COMMESSA: Per il momento abbiamo solo questa. Guardi pure. Secondo me, è la migliore.
 JOE: E' molto chiara. La prendo. Quant'è?
 COMMESSA: 17 euro in tutto. La pianta costa 5 euro.
 JOE: Ecco 20 euro.
 COMMESSA: 18, 19, 20, ecco . . . Grazie, signore. ArrivederLa. Buongiorno.
 JOE: Buongiorno.



Santa Maria Novella, Florence; courtesy of Suzanne Cousin.
 This church, near the San Lorenzo market, also gives the main rail station its name.

Vocabulary notes

vorrei 'I'd like'. Polite way of asking for something in a shop – see below.

tascabile lit. 'pocketable'. **una tasca** means 'a pocket'.

posso vedere? 'may I see?' (see below)

ha ragione 'you're right'

abbiamo 'we have'

guardi pure 'please have a look/please do have a look'

altro? 'anything else?'

la prendo 'I'll take it', lit. 'I take it' (present tense)

quant'è? (quanto è) 'how much does it come to in total?', 'how much is it?' – usually referring to all the items bought

Language points

The comparative

You have met **più o meno** 'more or less'. To compare two people or things, you use **più**:

questa guida è più pratica	this guidebook is more practical
piccola	smaller
interessante	more interesting

In Italian few words actually change in the comparative form; most are simply preceded by **più**. Exceptions are:

migliore	better	maggiore	bigger
peggiore	worse	minore	smaller

But you can also say: **più buono**, **più cattivo**, **più grande** and **più piccolo**. Purists prefer the first forms, but the second are frequently heard.

To say things from the other point of view, you use **meno** 'less':

Questo libro è meno importante.

This book is not so important (less important).

Vorrei una guida meno grande.

I'd like a smaller guidebook.

To compare one thing with another, in phrases such as ‘smaller than, more interesting than’, use **di**:

Questo libro è più interessante di quello.

Firenze è più piccola di Roma.

Firenze è meno grande di Roma.

Il più grande, la più grande means ‘the biggest’:

Di tutte le città italiane, Roma è la più grande.

Questo ristorante è caro, ma secondo me è il migliore della città.

Questa cartolina è la più bella di tutte.

Note:

la più bella	}	di	the most beautiful	}	in
il migliore			the best		

However, **più** can also mean ‘plus’ and **meno** can mean ‘minus’:

Due più due fa quattro $2 + 2 = 4$

Quattro meno due fa due $4 - 2 = 2$

Exercise 1

Vero o falso? Say if the following statements are true or false.

- 1 L'Italia è più grande del Canada.
- 2 Un albergo è più caro di un campeggio.
- 3 L'Everest è più alto dell'Etna.
- 4 L'elefante è più feroce del leone.
- 5 Napoli è più tranquilla di Venezia.

'False friends'

infatti is frequently used by Italians when agreeing with something someone has said. It means ‘indeed’ rather than ‘in fact’, which is **in effetti, in realtà**. You have seen that Italian is highly ‘guessable’. Many Italian words resemble English words. Language professionals refer to such words as *cognates*. Cognates make the learner’s task easier. However, there are some cases where the similarity is misleading. These words are sometimes called ‘false friends’. One false friend you have already met is **simpatico**, which does not mean quite the same as ‘sympathetic’ in English. If a person

is **simpatico**, you find him congenial, likeable but he does not necessarily feel sympathy for you.

In the cases of both of these words, it is not disastrous if you get the word wrong. Indeed it is often more a laughing matter and everyone will probably enjoy it. For instance Italians use **suggestivo** to mean 'beautiful' and it has no hint of the meaning given to 'suggestive' in English, hence Italian tourist brochures may refer to 'suggestive views'. But it makes all the difference to your Italian if you pay attention to the points where the two languages differ and try to get things right.

Common false friends

accidenti!	good heavens!	un incidente	an accident
attualmente	at present	veramente	actually
bravo	good, clever (at something)	coraggioso	brave
conferenza	lecture	congresso	conference
educato	polite	lettura	reading
fattoria	farm	colto, istruito	educated
ginnasio	high school	fabbrica	factory
largo	wide	palestra	gymnasium
libreria	bookshop	grande	large
morbido	soft	biblioteca	library
occorrere	be necessary	malsano, morboso	morbid
sensibile	sensitive	succedere	happen, occur
		senso	sensible

Exercise 2

What does the following short paragraph mean? Watch out for the false friends!

Alberto è un ragazzo molto educato. Attualmente frequenta il ginnasio. E' uno studente molto bravo. Gli piace la lettura e va spesso nelle librerie a guardare e comprare libri.

Asking if you may do something, saying you want to or have to do something

The word **posso ...?** means 'can I, may I ...?'. You first met it in Unit 4. **posso**, like **devo**, is part of an irregular verb and one

that is just as useful. Indeed there is a trio: **dovere** ‘to have to’, **potere** ‘to be able to’ and **volere** ‘to want’, which, combined with an infinitive, enable you to say a lot of useful things. You have already met the present of **dovere** (singular). Here are the other two and **dovere** too to help you:

<i>potere</i>	<i>volere</i>	<i>dovere</i>
posso	voglio	devo
puoi	vuoi	devi
può	vuole	deve

You can now make combinations. Here are a few:

posso	}	}	parlare
voglio			finire
devo			partire
e così via			andare
			lavorare
			giocare
			(and so on)

You can now ask other people if they are able, willing or have to do something.

Formal

Può portare questo per me?

Can you carry this for me?

Vuole andare a Firenze domani?

Do you want to go to Florence tomorrow?

Deve veramente partire? Mi dispiace.

Do you really have to leave? I'm sorry.

Informal

Puoi finire questo per me?

Can you finish this for me?

Vuoi giocare a tennis?

Do you want to play tennis?

Devi andare a Roma?

Do you have to go to Rome?

Saying what you'd like, and what you could or ought to do

When you are requesting something, in a shop for instance, it is more courteous to say **vorrei** 'I'd like' than **voglio** 'I want'. **vorrei** is the first person singular 'I' form of a different part of the verb called the *conditional*. We shall look at the conditional in detail in Unit 15. Also useful are two other first person singular conditionals:

potrei	I could
dovrei	I ought to

Dovrei andare a Roma domani, potrei partire con il treno delle 7.00, ma vorrei aspettare la telefonata di Giorgio prima di decidere.

I ought to go to Rome tomorrow, I could leave on the 7 a.m. train but I should like to wait for Giorgio's phone call before deciding.

si può? Asking whether something is possible

You saw in Unit 3 that you can use this to ask if something is possible. And of course you can use it to say it is impossible:

Si può prenotare un posto al cinema per questo film?

No, signore, mi dispiace, non si può.

Can one book a seat in the cinema for this film?

I'm sorry, Sir, it is not possible.

Exercise 3

Pair the sentences in the first group below with logical follow-ups from those in the second group.

- 1 Vado a Parigi, ma non parlo francese.
- 2 Non mi piace la pizza.
- 3 Potrei prenotare due posti per il film stasera?
- 4 Andiamo in questa libreria.
- 5 Sono stanco.

- a Mi dispiace, signore, ma non si può.
- b Dovrei studiare la lingua.

- c Vorrei andare a dormire.
- d Potrei prendere gli spaghetti alla bolognese?
- e Vorrei comprare una guida della città.

Exercise 4

How would you say the following in Italian?

- 1 I want to go to Rome.
- 2 I'm sorry, I can't go to Rome.
- 3 May I see the book?
- 4 Can you play tennis tomorrow?
Sorry, I can't. I have to go to Milan.
- 5 I don't want to leave tomorrow.
- 6 Is it possible to leave for Rome tonight?
I'm sorry, it's not possible.
- 7 I'd like a beer.
- 8 Is it possible to pay by credit card?
(**pagare con la carta di credito**)
- 9 Can you (people generally) see Etna from here?

Using secondo me

This means 'according to me' but is a very useful way of expressing the idea 'in my opinion, I think that ...'. It can be adapted:

secondo **me**
 te
 lui
 lei
 Paolo

Dialogue 2

Cinque cartoline per favore

Joe intends to send postcards to friends back home. He goes into a Tabaccheria, which has some attractive displays of cards.

- 1 How many postcards does Joe buy?
- 2 Which country does he plan to send them to?

- TABACCAIO: Dica.
 JOE: Posso vedere le cartoline?
 TABACCAIO: Certo, faccia pure.
 JOE: Quanto costano?
 TABACCAIO: Queste qui, normali, costano 40 centesimi l'una. Le grandi costano 55 l'una.
 JOE: Allora, prendo cinque di quelle normali e cinque grandi. Sono molto belle, le grandi, ma un po' care.
 TABACCAIO: Sì, sono bellissime, ma se deve scrivere a molte persone . . . Allora, sono 4 euro e 75 in tutto. Vuole anche i francobolli?
 JOE: Sì, mi dia dieci francobolli per gli Stati Uniti.
 TABACCAIO: Via aerea?
 JOE: Sì, grazie.
 TABACCAIO: Metto i francobolli qui nella busta con le cartoline. Le do anche dieci etichette 'via aerea'. Desidera altro?
 JOE: No, grazie. Quant'è?

Cultural point

In Italy tobacco and cigarettes come under a state monopoly and are therefore sold through licensed outlets. This explains why tobacconists also sell stamps (and, at one time, salt, which was also under a state monopoly). The post office also sells stamps, of course, along with other functions. A letter or postcard going outside Europe will need to be sent via aerea 'by air'. For mail within Italy and Europe a relatively new service: *prioritaria*, for which you pay extra, seems to get letters to their destinations quickly, in a way that used to be unknown in Italy.

Language points

Plurals of nouns

<i>Singular ending</i>	<i>Plural ending</i>
-o (m.)	-i
-a (f.)	-e
-e (m. and f.)	-i

Examples

un francobollo	dieci francobolli
un palazzo	due palazzi
una cartolina	cinque cartoline
una fontana	tre fontane
uno studente	cento studenti
una torre	due torri

Exception

Monosyllabic nouns and nouns ending in a consonant or a stressed vowel do not change in the plural:

due bar
tre computer
dieci caffè

Plurals of adjectives

Adjectives form their plurals in the same way:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
americano	americani
bello	belli
americana	americane
bella	belle
inglese	inglesi
interessante	interessanti

So we have:

un signore americano
due signori americani

un libro interessante
due libri interessanti

Exercise 5

The bar is very busy and the barman is working fast. But either he is flustered or he is not hearing properly. He repeats the orders to the customers, but in each case he gets it wrong. Be the customers and correct him as indicated.

Example: **Un vino rosso, vero?** No, two ____.

You say: **No, due vini rossi.**

- 1 Un caffè, vero? 'No, three ____.'
- 2 Un'aranciata, vero? 'No, four ____.'
- 3 Una birra, vero? 'No, five ____.'
- 4 Un'acqua minerale, vero? 'No, six ____.'
- 5 Una spremuta di arancia, vero? 'No, seven ____.'
- 6 Un cappuccino, vero? 'No, eight ____.'

(to customer number seven, as the barman turns away)

Oh, questo barista è decisamente strano.

Plurals of definite articles

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Feminine	la	le
	l'	le
Masculine	il	i
	l'	gli
	lo	gli

Examples

la strada	le strade
l'acqua	le acque
il francobollo	i francobolli
l'americano	gli americani
lo studente	gli studenti

Note: (1) **lo stato** –means 'the state' and hence we have **gli Stati Uniti d'America**. (2) **le**, the feminine plural article, is not shortened when the next word starts with a vowel.

Exercise 6

Here are some nouns, sometimes with adjectives describing them. What would be the correct word for 'the' to use with each one?

Example: _____ **pianta tascabile**

Answer: **la pianta tascabile**

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 _____ albergo caro | 6 _____ studente americano |
| 2 _____ città tranquilla | 7 _____ uffici pubblici |
| 3 _____ ragazzi educati | 8 _____ monumento importante |
| 4 _____ cartoline grandi | 9 _____ scontrini |
| 5 _____ francobolli italiani | 10 _____ città italiane |

Using questo/quello

These may be used as an adjective, with a noun, or as a pronoun, standing for a noun.

Prendo questo. (pr.)

I'll have this one (referring to a masculine noun).

Mi piace quella fontana. (adj.)

I like that fountain.

– **Vuoi comprare questa cartolina?** (adj.)

– **No, preferisco quella.** (pr.)

– Do you want to buy this postcard?

– No, I prefer that one.

Questo (pr.) **è più grande;** **quello** (pr.) **è più interessante.**

This one is bigger; that one is more interesting.

quello, when used in front of a noun, has forms like those of the definite article:

il palazzo	quel palazzo	i palazzi	quei palazzi
l'albergo	quell'albergo	gli alberghi	quegli alberghi
lo stato	quello stato	gli stati	quegli stati
la fontana	quella fontana	le fontane	quelle fontane
l'acqua	quell'acqua	le acque	quelle acque

The changes are to do with sound and the smooth flow of speech from the tongue; the forms are those that flow for Italian. Say them to yourself.

Exercise 7

Look back at Exercise 6. Instead of 'the' in each case, what would you put for 'that/those'?

Plural subject pronouns

noi we
voi you (more than one person)
loro they

Don't forget that more often than not Italians omit the subject pronoun. However, these pronouns, unlike the singular ones (see Unit 1), can also be used after a preposition ('with, in, from'); and with **secondo**:

Noi siamo con loro.	We are with them.
Parte con voi?	Is he leaving with you?
Vuole venire con noi.	He wants to come with us.
secondo loro	in their opinion

In other words, they are also the *strong pronouns*.

Plurals of regular verbs

-are	-ere	-ire
-iamo	-iamo	-iamo
-ate	-ete	-ite
-ano	-ono	-ono/iscono

<i>parlare</i>	<i>vedere</i>	<i>partire</i>	<i>finire</i>
parliamo	vediamo	partiamo	finiamo
parlate	vedete	partite	finite
parlano	vedono	partono	finiscono

Look closely: the differences are small. For all verbs, the **noi** form is **-iamo**. For **voi**, the distinguishing or characteristic vowel of the infinitive appears: **-ate**, **-ete**, **-ite**. For the **loro** form, the **-are** verbs have **-ano**, the others **-ono**. Also for the **loro** form, the stress moves

from the penultimate syllable to the antepenultimate. The stressed vowel is indicated above by the underlining. Note also, that verbs like **finire** have the extra **-isc-** only in the third person in the plural.

Exercise 8

How would you complete the following sentences in Italian? We give you the verb to use. Don't forget to leave out the pronoun ('we, you' etc.).

- 1 (We prefer) Roma a New York. (**preferire** – it works like **finire**)
- 2 (We arrive) a casa alle sei e mezzo. (**arrivare**)
- 3 (They are buying) una guida di Roma. (**comprare**)
4. Gianni e Carlo, (do you understand) l'inglese? (**capire**)
- 5 Anna e Giorgio (are leaving) alle otto. (**partire**)
- 6 Gli studenti (are having) un caffè. (**prendere**)

Using quanto costa?

Now you probably understand why the question is sometimes **quanto costa?** and sometimes **quanto costano?**. **costare** is an **-are** verb, so:

Quanto costa?	How much does it cost?
Quanto costano?	How much do they cost?

quant'è? or **quanto fa?** are usually used to enquire about the total cost: 'how much does it come to?'.

Plurals of irregular verbs

<i>essere</i>	<i>avere</i>	<i>potere</i>	<i>dovere</i>	<i>volere</i>
siamo	abbiamo	possiamo	dobbiamo	vogliamo
siete	avete	potete	dovete	volete
sono	hanno	possono	devono	vogliono

As you study these you will realize that, for the most part, the irregularities are sound changes in the 'root' of the verb, not in the endings.

Exercise 9

Here are two short paragraphs. Most of the verbs have been left in the infinitive. Can you write down the correct form in each case?

- (a) Mio marito ed io (1 *andare*) in discoteca questa sera. Generalmente la sera (2 *guardare*) la TV, (3 *leggere*) o (4 *invitare*) amici. Ma questa sera (5 *volere*) cambiare.
- (b) Gli Italiani (1 *lavorare*) molto. Generalmente (2 *cominciare*) a lavorare alle 7.30, alle 8.00 o alle 8.30. A mezzogiorno molti (3 *tornare*) a casa per mangiare, altri (4 *mangiare*) in città. (5 *Finire*) di lavorare alle 6.00 o alle 7.00 di sera. Se (6 *volere*) andare al cinema o a teatro (7 *dovere*) mangiare rapidamente. Il teatro comincia alle 9.00.

molti	many people
altri	others, other people
se	if

Reading

Il mercato in Italia

1 Why is it easy to visit a market in Italy?

2 Why are the restaurants and bars full on market day?

Per lo straniero in Italia, un divertimento e un piacere è la visita al mercato locale. Ogni paese ha un mercato almeno una volta alla settimana e questo è vero anche nelle grandi città dove ci sono mercati di quartiere. Il turista ammira la frutta e la verdura: tutto è sempre fresco e disposto con arte per attirare il cliente. Spesso ci sono contadini che vengono dalla campagna con i loro prodotti: uova, frutta e verdura, noci, funghi, dipende dalla stagione. Generalmente c'è anche un venditore di formaggi, una bancarella di pesce e spesso un macellaio che vende la carne. In più ci sono vestiti, articoli da cucina, scarpe e sandali, borse, biancheria da casa, un po' di tutto, insomma. Il mercato è anche un luogo di incontro per la gente del paese e della campagna circostante. I bar, i ristoranti e le strade sono pieni di persone che chiacchierano con animazione.

Vocabulary

lo straniero	the foreigner	piacere	pleasure
un divertimento	entertainment	almeno	at least
la verdura	vegetables	attirare	to attract
contadini	peasants, farmers, country people	uova	eggs
stagione	season	nocci	walnuts
pesce	fish	formaggi	cheeses
vestiti	clothes	macellaio	butcher
scarpe	shoes	cucina	kitchen, cooking
borse	bags, handbags	biancheria	household
chiacchierare	to chat, chatter	da casa	linen

Exercise 10

Going over and revising what you have learned is a good way of fixing it more securely in your mind. If you haven't been doing this, try reviewing Unit 1 and perhaps further units. You should find that things that seemed difficult or strange at first have become clearer.

6 Appuntamenti

Engagements

In this unit you will learn about:

- Making appointments
- Hours, days, weeks, months, seasons, years and the date
- Using the telephone and mobile phones
- Prepositions: **a** and other prepositions + definite article; prepositions generally
- Reflexive and reciprocal verbs ('to enjoy oneself', 'to speak to each other')
- More irregular verbs
- Telling people to do something – the imperative

Dialogue 1

Vorrei parlare con il signor Rossi

Angela Smith calls signor Rossi to arrange a meeting next week to discuss their new project.

- 1 When would Mrs Smith like to have a meeting with Mr Rossi?**
- 2 After agreeing to the meeting, what suggestion does Mr Rossi make to Mrs Smith?**

SMITH: Pronto, ditta Rossi?

SEGRETARIA: Sì, buongiorno. Desidera?

SMITH: Vorrei parlare con il signor Rossi.

SEGRETARIA: Chi parla?

SMITH: Sono Angela Smith.

SEGRETARIA: Ah, buongiorno signora Smith. Un attimo, per favore. Le passo subito il signor Rossi.

- ROSSI: Pronto. Buongiorno, signora, come va?
 SMITH: Bene grazie, e Lei? Senta, vengo in Italia la settimana prossima. Possiamo vederci per parlare del nuovo progetto?
- ROSSI: Buona idea. Quando Le va bene?
 SMITH: Martedì devo andare a Torino. Suggesto mercoledì alle nove. Va bene?
- ROSSI: Sì, anche per me va bene. Mercoledì, 17 giugno.
 SMITH: Giusto.
 ROSSI: E mercoledì sera, se Lei è libera, venga a cena con me e mia moglie.
 SMITH: Grazie, è molto gentile. Accetto con piacere. Arrivederci alla settimana prossima.

ditta company, firm
cena supper, evening meal



Language points

Hours, days, weeks, months, years

You should be able to work out what these mean:

un secondo	60 secondi	= un minuto
un minuto	60 minuti	= un'ora
un'ora	24 ore	= un giorno
un giorno	7 giorni	= una settimana

una settimana **4 settimane = un mese**
un mese **12 mesi = un anno**
un anno

Do you remember how to say ‘wait a moment’ (Unit 1)?

un attimo

or often

attenda/aspetti un attimo

Vocabulary

Here are some more words related to days, months and years.

oggi	today
ieri	yesterday
l'altro ieri	the day before yesterday
domani	tomorrow
dopodomani	the day after tomorrow
la settimana prossima	next week
la settimana scorsa	last week
mattino, mattina	morning (both masculine and feminine forms exist – use either)
pomeriggio	afternoon
ogni giorno	daily (adv.)
quotidiano	daily (adj.); also ‘daily newspaper’ (as noun)
ogni settimana	weekly
ogni mese	monthly
il giorno dopo	the day after
il giorno prima	the day before
l'indomani	the next day (the day after the one being talked about, usually in the past)
quindici giorni, due settimane	a fortnight

Do you remember the words for ‘evening’ and ‘night’?

Exercise 1

Using the words given above, how do you think you might say the following? Don't forget, **mese** and **anno** are masculine.

- 1 next month
- 2 last month

- 3 next year
- 4 last year
- 5 annually

Can you guess how you might say:

- 6 tomorrow morning
- 7 yesterday afternoon

Note: ‘This morning’, ‘this evening’ and ‘tonight’ are usually **stamatina**, **stasera** and **stanotte** respectively, i.e. **questa** is abbreviated to **sta**. ‘This afternoon’ is **questo pomeriggio** or **oggi pomeriggio**.

i giorni della settimana

The days of the week:

lunedì	venerdì
martedì	sabato
mercoledì	domenica
giovedì	

Note: All have irregular stress and are written without capital letters. All are masculine, except **la domenica**.

arrivo lunedì	I arrive/am arriving on Monday
arrivo il lunedì	I arrive on Mondays (regularly)
a sabato	see you on Saturday
a domani	see you tomorrow
a stasera	see you this evening
alla settimana prossima	see you next week

i mesi dell'anno

The months of the year:

gennaio	maggio	settembre
febbraio	giugno	ottobre
marzo	luglio	novembre
aprile	agosto	dicembre

Again, no capital letters are used and all are masculine.

When giving the date you say:

il primo dicembre	il due dicembre
l'otto dicembre	il trentun dicembre

i.e. you use the ordinal for ‘the first’ only. Note also that **trentun** works like **un**, as do other numbers ending in **uno**.

There is more than one way of asking what the date is:

Qual è la data (di) oggi?

What’s the date today?

Oggi è il venti aprile.

Today is the twentieth of April.

di is optional. Or, when you know the month but are not sure of the day:

Quanti ne abbiamo oggi?

What’s the date today?

Oggi ne abbiamo 20.

It’s the 20th.

Che giorno è oggi?

What day is it today?

‘On’ with a date is omitted:

Arrivo il diciassette giugno.

I’m arriving on the seventeenth of June.

That is the usual word order; the number is *not* put after the month. And when abbreviating, the order is the European one:

03.11.04 = **il tre novembre 2004**

To say simply ‘in July’ you can use either **a** or **in**:

Mark, il mio amico inglese, viene in Italia a luglio.

Mark, my English friend, is coming to Italy in July.

Exercise 2

Say these dates aloud in Italian and then write them down.

1 1 May

4 11 June

2 25 December

5* 25 April

3 14 July

6* 20 September

7 Work out the date of your own birthday, **compleanno**.

* These two dates are often used for street names. They mark respectively the liberation of Italy at the end of the Second World War; and the date in 1870 when the Papal States fell to the troops of the then recently unified Italian state, thus completing it.

le quattro stagioni

Here are the four seasons:

l'inverno la primavera l'estate (f.) l'autunno

You say: **in inverno, in primavera, in estate, in autunno**. With **inverno** and **estate**, **di** can also be used.

al telefono *Using the telephone*

Vocabulary

telefonare a una persona	to telephone someone
chiamare una persona	to call someone
carta/scheda telefonica	telephone card
una cabina telefonica	telephone box
pronto	hello (pronto also means 'ready')
chi parla?	who is calling/speaking?
con chi parlo?	who am I talking to? who's speaking?
sono Giorgio	(this is) Giorgio speaking
c'è Carla?	is Carla there/available?
sì, c'è/no, non c'è	yes, she's here/no, she's not here
teleselezione	direct dialling
prefisso	area (or country) code (see note below)
centralino	switchboard
interno	extension
attenda (resti) in linea	hold the line
le passo . . .	I'm putting you through to . . .
mi sente?	can you hear me?
è caduta la linea	I (we)'ve been/were cut off
scusi, ho sbagliato numero	I'm sorry, I've dialled the wrong number
numero verde	freephone number (starts with 167)
segreteria telefonica	telephone answering machine
un abbonato	subscriber
un elenco telefonico	telephone directory

Note: Italian area codes must be included even when you dial from *within* that area. When dialling from outside Italy, do *not* omit the 0 of the area code. So in Milan, calling a Milan number, you dial the area code 02 and then the number. Calling from outside Italy, you dial 00 39 (code for Italy) 02 and then the number.

Italians vary in how they say telephone numbers. It is usual to say:

nove tre sei sette uno cinque sei 9367156

but some people group the numbers:

novantatrè, sessantasette, quindici, sei

We advise the first system.

The dialling tone in Italy is a short tone followed by a longer tone. When the number is ringing you hear a long tone, repeated. If the number is engaged you get a repeated short tone.

Exercise 3

Look at the information below from an Italian telephone directory and say which number you would call if:

- 1 You saw a building on fire.
- 2 You saw someone collapse in the street.
- 3 You saw a bridge collapse.
- 4 Your house had been broken into.
- 5 You were a child with a problem you couldn't handle and no one to turn to about it.

NUMERI DI EMERGENZA

Soccorso pubblico di emergenza	113
Carabinieri – pronto intervento	112
Vigili del fuoco – pronto intervento	115
Soccorso stradale	803.116
Emergenza sanitaria	118
Pronto soccorso autoambulanze	118
Telefono azzurro – Linea gratuita per i bambini	1.96.96

Using mobile phones, il telefonino/il cellulare

un sms a text message
(un esse emme esse) (from the English: Short Message Service); also called **un messaggino (telefonico)**

The **telefonino** quickly became widely popular in Italy. It has been argued that it is another means by which the usually tight-knit Italian family keeps a check on its members!

Text messaging, however, does not seem to have developed the same lively special language as it has in English. Perhaps Italian lends itself less to creative abbreviation. The most usual thing is to eliminate the vowels in words, thus **non sono libero** becomes **nn sn libero**. For example:

che	often becomes	ke			
chi	often becomes	ki	so	ki 6	= chi sei?
per	becomes	x	so	xke	= perché
comunque	becomes	cmq			

This is particularly popular among teenagers (who also abbreviate **messaggino** to **mess** or **mex**), but rather frowned on by the generation immediately preceding them – e.g. those in their twenties. Older generations are often completely unaware of the practice. It is the teenagers too who use messages such as:

TVB = ti voglio bene

I love you

TVTB = ti voglio tanto bene

I love you so much

TAT = ti amo tanto

I love you

These are perhaps similar to SWALK in English and of course precede the mobile phone. However, Italian is a language of long words and suppressing some of the vowels when you text can save time!

Dialogue 2

Andiamo al cinema

Alberto telephones Marisa to ask her to go to the cinema with him.

1 Which days can Alberto not manage?

2 Where do they decide to meet?

ALBERTO: Pronto. Casa Rossini? C'è Marisa?

MARISA: Sì, sono io. Chi parla?

- ALBERTO: Ciao, Marisa. Sono Alberto. Senti, danno quel nuovo film al Lux la settimana prossima. Sai, il film che ha avuto il Leone d'oro al Festival di Venezia. Che dici? Andiamo a vederlo?
- MARISA: Sì, volentieri. Quando?
- ALBERTO: Lunedì non posso perché ho una riunione. Va bene martedì?
- MARISA: Mi dispiace, faccio sempre aerobica il martedì.
- ALBERTO: E io il mercoledì gioco sempre a tennis con Raffaele. Giovedì ti va bene?
- MARISA: Giovedì, vediamo un attimo. Il 10, vero?
- ALBERTO: Sì, il 10 ottobre.
- MARISA: (*consulting her diary*) Sì, sono libera. Per me va benissimo giovedì. Dove ci troviamo?
- ALBERTO: Andiamo a mangiare la pizza prima? Ti vengo a prendere alle 7.00.
- MARISA: Perfetto. A giovedì allora. Ciao.
- ALBERTO: Ciao, a giovedì.

Language points

Prepositions

Prepositions with the definite article

You have now met a number of examples and it is time to give you the whole picture. The spelling reflects the way **a** combines with the definite article in speech:

a + il	→	al	al supermercato
a + l' (m.)	→	all'	all'aeroporto
a + lo	→	allo	allo stadio
a + la	→	alla	alla stazione
a + l' (f.)	→	all'	all'entrata
a + i	→	ai	ai negozi
a + gli	→	agli	agli scavi
a + le	→	alle	alle casse

gli scavi excavations (archaeological) **la cassa** till, cash desk

Look back to **quel** in Unit 5. It works the same way.

The same thing happens with four other common, short prepositions: **da**, **su**, **in** and **di**. The following examples are taken from earlier units:

un panorama <i>sulla</i> valle	<i>sulla</i> destra, <i>sulla</i> sinistra
salire <i>sull'</i>autobus	informarsi <i>sul</i> posto
<i>dal</i> tabaccaio	<i>dal</i> giornalaio

In and **di** change when they combine with the article:

in + il	→	nel
di + il	→	del

metto i francobolli *nella* busta
i mesi *dell'*anno
i giorni *della* settimana
prima *della* partenza
una guida *della* città

These forms are called *articulated prepositions*. The full table can be found in the Grammar section at the end of the book.

Warning: These very common prepositions (**a**, **di**, **da**, **in**, **su**) should be handled with care. They are arguably the trickiest thing to learn to use correctly in Italian. Nonetheless, you should not be too inhibited by this warning, as a mistake in a preposition does not usually obscure your meaning.

For example, Italian uses **a** to mean 'to' or 'in' when talking about towns and cities and **in** when talking about countries, regions etc. Direction or place (*going to* or *being in*) is indicated in the verb.

Abito	a Roma	I live	in Rome
	in Italia		in Italy
Devo andare	a Roma	I have to go	to Rome
	in Italia		to Italy

Note: You use the article as well as **in** with countries that are plural:

Devo andare **negli Stati Uniti**
nei Paesi Bassi (Netherlands)
nelle Antille (West Indies)

It makes sense to learn usages as you go along. For instance **a** can mean 'to', 'in', 'at', or even 'on' in some cases:

Andiamo al cinema	Let's go to the cinema
Siamo al cinema	We are at the cinema
Abita a Roma	He lives in Rome
Marco è al telefono	Marco's on the phone

Another tricky preposition is **da**: **da** can mean 'at the house/ establishment of'. For example, **dal tabaccaio** means 'at the tobacconist's' (cf. French 'chez').

Fra and **tra** are interchangeable and mean 'among, between, through', and with an expression of time, 'in ...'s time'.

fra Milano e Genova	between Milan and Genoa
fra un'ora	in an hour's time

Other common prepositions

Other common prepositions are listed below. There are fewer idiomatic uses with these.

con	with	senza (di)	without
per	for, through, by	attraverso	across, through
contro (di)	against	dietro (di)	behind
davanti a	in front of	accanto a	beside, next to
di fronte a	opposite	in fondo a	at the bottom of
sopra (di)	above	oltre	beyond
in mezzo a	in the middle of	dopo (di)	after
prima di	before	entro*	by (+ point in time)

* **Finiamo entro giovedì** 'We'll finish by Thursday'

Where **(di)** is indicated above, **di** is used before a pronoun, for example:

senza di lui	without him
contro di me	against me

Exercise 4

The following information comes from the brochure of a gymnasium. Complete it by putting articulated prepositions in the blanks. We indicate which preposition you should use (e.g. **su**) but leave you to work out how it combines with the definite article. *Note*: **salute** is feminine. You should be able to work out the gender of the other nouns.

SERVIZI OFFERTI

Biblioteca (su) ____ salute e (su) ____ sport

Ampio parcheggio

La possibilità (in) ____ bella stagione di allenarsi

(a) ____ aperto tra il verde

Orario:

(da) ____ lunedì (a) ____ venerdì (da) ____

ore 9.00 (a) ____ ore 21.15

il sabato (da) ____ ore 10.00 (a) ____ ore 12.30

salute

health

ampio parcheggio

large car park

allenarsi

to train, to work out

And this is from an advertising brochure for a self-service restaurant:

Per il pranzo (in) ____ corso (di) ____ intervallo di lavoro, per la cena che segue (a) ____ shopping, per ritrovarsi con gli amici prima (di) ____ spettacolo in una sala (di) ____ centro, per una sosta ristoratrice fra una scoperta e l'altra (in) ____ la città in cui si fa turismo . . . la soluzione è Brek.

pranzo

lunch

cena

supper

spettacolo

show

sala

hall (theatre, cinema etc.)

sosta

pause, stop

scoperta

discovery

Note: **shopping** is considered as beginning with s + consonant.

Reflexive/reciprocal verbs

**Mi chiamo Harry.
Come si chiama?**

We explained in Unit 2 that **chiamare** means ‘to call’ and **mi chiamo** means ‘I call myself’, i.e. ‘my name is’. The infinitive is **chiamarsi**. A verb that works this way is called a *reflexive verb*, i.e. one that ‘turns back on itself’. The present tense of **chiamarsi** is:

mi chiamo	ci chiamiamo
ti chiami	vi chiamate
si chiama	si chiamano

mi, ti etc. are called *reflexive pronouns*. In the infinitive form the reflexive pronoun follows the verb and is written joined to it. Sometimes there is a direct equivalence between an Italian verb and an English verb:

<i>divertirsi</i>	<i>to enjoy oneself</i>
mi diverto	I enjoy/am enjoying myself
ti diverti	you enjoy/are enjoying yourself
si diverte	he/she enjoys/is enjoying himself/herself
ci divertiamo	we are enjoying ourselves
vi divertite	you are enjoying yourselves
si divertono	they are enjoying themselves

But often this is not the case. Common reflexive verbs are:

alzarsi	to get up
coricarsi	to lie down
addormentarsi	to fall asleep
svegliarsi	to wake up
riposarsi	to rest
lavarsi	to wash (oneself)
pettinarsi	to comb/do one’s hair
vestirsi	to dress, get dressed
accorgersi	to notice
sposarsi	to get married
rendersi conto	to realize

accomodarsi ‘to make oneself comfortable’, is used particularly in the formal invitation **s’accomodi** ‘take a seat, sit down’.

In the plural some verbs are used with the reflexive pronoun to indicate the action is *reciprocal*:

Dove ci troviamo?

lit. 'Where shall we find each other?'

i.e. 'Where shall we meet?'

Non si parlano.

They don't talk/are not speaking to each other.

Si vedono ogni sabato.

They see each other each Saturday.

Grammatically sophisticated readers may be assured: the reflexive pronouns **mi**, **ti** etc. can mean both 'myself' and 'to myself', 'yourself' and 'to yourself', i.e. they can be *direct* and *indirect* objects of the verb.

Note: Common ways of saying 'goodbye' between friends are **ci vediamo** or **ci sentiamo**, meaning 'see you soon' and 'we'll telephone each other' respectively.

Exercise 5

The printer has got the following sentences muddled up. They describe what I do every morning. Put them into a more logical order.

- 1 Mi pettino.
- 2 Non mi alzo subito.
- 3 Mi vesto.
- 4 Vado in bagno.
- 5 Mi sveglio alle sette.
- 6 Mi lavo.

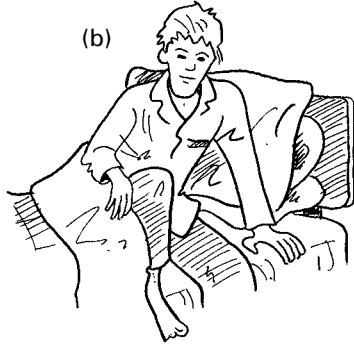
Exercise 6

Lucio has done a series of drawings of his morning routine. What does he do? Here are the verbs you need: **pettinarsi**, **fare la doccia**, **vestirsi**, **svegliarsi**, **fare colazione**, **alzarsi**, **prepararsi**.

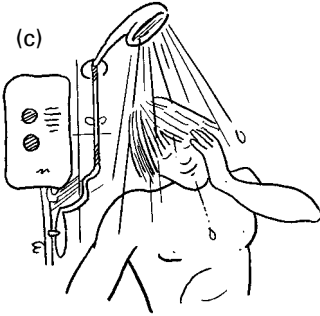
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)



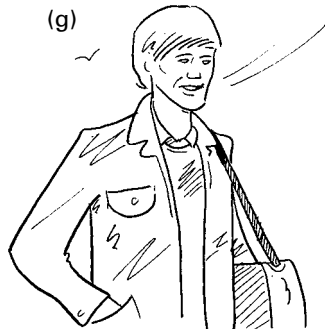
(e)



(f)



(g)



More irregular verbs

<i>andare</i>	<i>venire</i>	<i>fare</i>	<i>sapere</i>	<i>dire</i>
vado	vengo	faccio	so	dico
vai	vieni	fai	sai	dici
va	viene	fa	sa	dice
andiamo	veniamo	facciamo	sappiamo	diciamo
andate	venite	fate	sapete	dite
vanno	vengono	fanno	sanno	dicono

You need to find your own way of learning these verbs. You will need them a lot – but you will also hear them a lot, which will help you.

– **Dove vai?**

– **Vado a fare la spesa. Perché non vieni con me?**

– **Buona idea, così faccio la spesa anch'io.**

– Where are you going?

– I'm going shopping. Why don't you come with me?

– Good idea, that way I'll do my shopping too.

– **Anna dice che non sa dove abita Luisa. Come facciamo a trovare la sua casa?**

– Anna says she doesn't know where Luisa lives? How shall we find her house?

Exercise 7

Here are two lists. The first contains questions and the second answers but again they have become muddled. Can you sort them out?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 Vuoi venire con me? | a Sì, vogliamo un po' di frutta e di verdura. |
| 2 Da dove vengono? | b Sì. Viene a trovarlo stasera. |
| 3 Che cosa dicono del progetto? | c Al cinema. |
| 4 Che cosa fai? | d Non posso oggi. |
| 5 Andate al mercato? | e Scrivo una lettera. |
| 6 Dove vanno Giorgio e Maria? | f Vengo io. |
| 7 Lucia sa che Giorgio arriva oggi? | g Non sanno che esiste. |
| 8 Chi viene con noi? | h Da Roma. |

Telling people to do something – the imperative

You have met a number of examples of this. For instance:

Giri a destra.

Turn right.

Prenda la terza sulla sinistra.

Take the third on the left.

Scusi.

Excuse me.

Senta.

Listen.

All these are examples of the *imperative*, the form of the verb used to give orders or instructions. They were all used in the formal form, addressed to people when using **lei**. How can we make sense of this?

Formal form

<i>-are verbs</i>		<i>All other verbs</i>	
scusare	scusi	prendere	prenda
girare	giri	sentire	senta
parlare	parli	dire	dica
accomodarsi	s'accomodi	venire	venga

The rule is that for verbs other than **-are** ones, the ending is **-a**, even if you are not quite sure what to attach it to. In fact, it is usually the first person singular of the verb, without **-o** (**veng(o)**, **dic(o)**).

But what about friends? Alberto said to Marisa: **sentì**. But you have not met other forms yet, as you have mostly met formal conversations. The rule is:

Informal form

<i>-are verbs: -a</i>	<i>All other verbs: -i</i>
scusa	sentì
gira	
parla	

You may have observed that it is exactly the opposite of the formal form and wonder how to get it right. We suggest that you choose two imperatives you hear frequently in Italy and make them your models. For example, **scusare** and **sentire**. Your friends will say to you: **Oh scusa, Joe/Mary/Mike/Ann** (substitute your own name). In the street people you don't know will say: **Scusi, signore/signora/signorina**, as appropriate. Similarly friends will attract your attention by saying: **Senti, Joe** etc., and people you do not know well will say: **Senta, signore** etc. These two make excellent models. Other verbs you commonly hear are:

-are verbs

<i>tu</i>		<i>Lei</i>	
guarda	Joe	guardi	signore
aspetta		aspetti	

Other verbs

<i>tu</i>	<i>Lei</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>Lei</i>
prendi	prendi	fa'	faccia
abbi pazienza	abbia pazienza¹	va'	vada
vieni	venga	da'	dia
dì'	dica		

1 lit. 'have patience', i.e. 'be patient'.

In fact, for regular **-ere** and **-ire** verbs, the **tu** form of the present is also the imperative form. This is also true for some irregular verbs (e.g. **vieni**). In the case of **dire**, **fare**, **andare** and **dare**, the full form is usually abbreviated, as (') shows.

Andiamo! 'Let's go!'

To include yourself in a suggestion, you use the **noi form** of the verb, but without **noi**. This is also an imperative.

Telefoniamo a Gianni!	Let's call/phone Gianni!
Mangiamo alle otto!	Let's eat at 8 o'clock!
Facciamo gli spaghetti!	Let's make spaghetti!

To tell several people to do something, you use the **voi** form of the verb, again without **voi**.

Andate presto!	Go quickly!
-----------------------	-------------

Telling someone not to do something

You simply use **non** and the verb:

Non dica questo.

Non giri a sinistra, vada dritto.

However, when you are using **tu**, you use **non** + infinitive:

Non dire questo.

Non girare, va' dritto.

Exercise 8

You and your friend Mario are on your way, by car, to Giorgio's house. You know the way and Mario, who is driving, doesn't, so you have to give him directions. The verbs have been left out. Choose the correct ones from the list that follows to make sense of your instructions. You may use two of them twice. As Mario is a friend, you use **tu** when talking to him.

**rallenta prendi girare va' gira sta'
facciamo cerca andare**

- 1 _____ la seconda sulla destra.
- 2 Qui, _____ a destra.
- 3 E poi _____ sempre dritto un po'.
- 4 Non _____ troppo veloce.
- 5 Ora al semaforo _____ a sinistra.
- 6 _____ sempre sulla sinistra perché devi girare di nuovo.
- 7 No, non _____ qui.
- 8 Ecco _____ un po'.
- 9 _____ questa via.
- 10 _____ un parcheggio in questa piazza.
- 11 _____ l'ultimo pezzo a piedi perché non si può parcheggiare.

Exercise 9

There's an air traffic controllers' strike – again. You are an airline employee and a passenger wants information about his flight.

YOU: (1) (Yes,) signore. (Say 'tell me', using *dire*, indicating you are ready to listen.)

PASSENGER: Quando parte il mio volo?

- YOU: (2) (Give me) il biglietto per favore. Mi dispiace, signore, il volo per Amsterdam ha due ore di ritardo.
- PASSENGER: Ma non è possibile! Devo essere a Amsterdam a mezzogiorno.
- YOU: (3) (Be patient), signore. (4) (Forgive me). Non posso fare niente. (5) (Make yourself comfortable) al bar o nel ristorante. (6) (Wait) con calma . . .

Exercise 10

Compose a text message (SMS) to someone in your office saying your flight to Amsterdam is two hours late and asking them to phone your hotel to warn them.

Reading

La domenica in Italia

- 1 Why is it difficult for families to be together on Saturdays?
- 2 Can you list five activities that an Italian family might be engaged in during a winter Sunday?
- 3 Where do many people enjoy going on summer Sundays?

La domenica è un giorno molto importante per gli Italiani. Il sabato molti adulti non lavorano ma i bambini sono a scuola la mattina. La domenica è dunque il giorno in cui tutti i membri della famiglia sono a casa. Spesso il venerdì o il sabato, si sente l'augurio 'Buona domenica!'. La domenica è il giorno in cui si invitano i familiari a pranzo a mezzogiorno. Il pomeriggio si va a fare una passeggiata in campagna o nei parchi o semplicemente si passeggia lungo la via principale della città, che è spesso zona pedonale. Certe persone, invece, d'inverno preferiscono passare il pomeriggio al cinema. Durante la stagione calcistica, i tifosi vanno allo stadio a vedere la partita. Se però devono accompagnare la famiglia a spasso, seguono la partita alla radio. E' divertente vedere questi signori camminare con la radiolina all'orecchio per seguire, anche da lontano, la loro squadra. In inverno dalle città del nord c'è l'esodo verso la montagna per sciare; invece d'estate sono il mare e la campagna che attirano i gitanti. La sera, sulle strade che vanno in città, qualsiasi città, si formano code di automobilisti che tornano

per prepararsi a una nuova settimana di lavoro. Il lunedì arriva sempre troppo presto.

Vocabulary

dunque	so, therefore	augurio	wish, greeting
spesso	often	(auguri!	best wishes!)
i familiari	relatives	il calcio	soccer
pedonale	traffic-free, reserved for pedestrians	calcistico	to do with soccer
pedoni	pedestrians	un tifoso	a fan
spasso	walk or outing for pleasure	camminare	to walk
esodo	exodus	orecchio	ear
una gita	a trip, an excursion	un gitante	tripper
casa	house, home	una coda	a queue

7 Giriamo

Let's get out and about

In this unit you will learn about:

- Booking into hotels
- Saying it doesn't matter, **non importa**
- The plural of nouns and adjectives ending in **-co** and **-go**, **-ca** and **-ga**
- The verb **uscire** 'to go out'
- Saying you are going to do something: **andare a fare . . .**
- Shopping for food and for clothes – and for computers
- Saying you need something, asking if someone needs something else, and saying you have enough
- Weights and measures
- Plurals of nouns ending in **-cia** and **-gia**
- Talking about colours

Dialogue 1

All'albergo (1)

Frances is touring Italy with her husband and another couple. They haven't booked accommodation because it's low season. Frances has been delegated to go into the Albergo della Fontana in a little Tuscan town to see whether they have rooms for tonight.

- 1 How many rooms does Frances want?**
- 2 What are the important points about the rooms for her and her party?**
- 3 Before deciding to take the rooms what does she ask to do?**

DIRETTORE: Buona sera, signora, desidera?

FRANCES: Avete una camera?

DIRETTORE: Sì, signora. Una camera singola o doppia?

- FRANCES: In realtà, vorrei due camere, due camere doppie. Una per me e mio marito, una per i nostri amici.
- DIRETTORE: Preferite un letto matrimoniale o due letti?
- FRANCES: Veramente non importa.
- DIRETTORE: Con bagno o senza?
- FRANCES: Oh, con bagno, per favore. E preferiamo camere tranquille.
- DIRETTORE: Certo, signora. Per una notte?
- FRANCES: No, per due notti.
- DIRETTORE: Abbiamo due camere tranquille. Danno sul cortile dietro l'albergo. Ma qui in ogni modo c'è poco traffico.
- FRANCES: Potrei vedere le camere?
- DIRETTORE: Sens'altro. Prendo le chiavi. Venga pure.

Vocabulary

i nostri amici	our friends		
veramente	really (vero means 'true'; lit. 'truly')		
danno sul cortile	they overlook the courtyard (implied 'at the back of the hotel')		
in ogni modo	in any case	c'è poco traffico	there's not much
senz'altro	of course		traffic

More vocabulary for hotels

una camera singola/doppia	a single/double room
una camera a un letto	a single room (room with one bed)
a due letti	a double (room with two beds)
matrimoniale	a room with a double bed (Italian double beds are generous)
con bagno	with bath
doccia	shower
aria condizionata	air-conditioning

Cultural point

Quite often Italian hotels do not have a dining room, so some hotels have a room charge without breakfast. They can usually provide a continental breakfast, however some guests may prefer to go to a nearby bar. The bar is the place to go for really good coffee (see Unit 1). If your hotel does not have a restaurant, that

leaves you free to try a variety places to eat during your stay. And you may well find you eat better than you would have done in a hotel.

Language points

non importa *'it doesn't matter'*

non importa means 'it doesn't matter, it's not important'. **importa** is a verb (**importare**), and the subject (which is not stated) is 'it'. A verb used in this way is called an *impersonal* verb, that is, the subject is not a person. Look out for others.

The plural of nouns and adjectives ending in -co and -go, -ca and -ga

Most nouns and adjectives ending in **-go** keep the hard **g** sound in the plural and therefore insert an **h** to indicate this:

un albergo **due alberghi**

Nouns ending in **-co** are less predictable. Generally speaking those in which the *penultimate* syllable bears the main stress keep the hard **c** and therefore insert an **h**:

un arco etrusco **due archi etruschi**
un vino bianco **due vini bianchi**

Exception:

un amico **due amici**

When the stress is on the *antepenultimate* syllable, however, there is usually a sound change:

un medico simpatico **due medici simpatici**

Note: Feminine nouns and adjectives in the feminine ending in **-ca** and **-ga** all keep the hard sound and insert the **h**, including:

un'amica **due amiche**

These points fall into place the more Italian you hear. Lists of exceptions are confusing for the beginner, so we are not giving them here. However, **amico** is such a common word, you should learn it. And remember: if in doubt, consult a dictionary. At this

stage don't worry too much, as mistakes do not usually impair communication. As your Italian becomes more sophisticated you can gradually aim to get these details correct.

Exercise 1

In the hotel conversation singulars and plurals were used:

una camera due camere un letto due letti

Here are some more words, sometimes with adjectives, to put into the plural (remind yourself of the forms first, Unit 5). In numbers 1 to 8, change to two of everything.

Example: **un letto**

Answer: **due letti**

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 un giorno | 5 una banca |
| 2 una settimana | 6 un giornale |
| 3 un mese interessante | 7 un cappuccino |
| 4 un nuovo progetto | 8 una birra |

In the next group you have definite articles ('the'). Make the whole word group plural.

Example: **il francobollo francese**

Answer: **i francobolli francesi**

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 9 il nuovo film | 13 la nuova galleria |
| 10 lo spettacolo | 14 la strada che va in città |
| 11 il giornale interessante | 15 l'adulto responsabile |
| 12 il supermercato francese | 16 il vino rosso |

Dialogue 2

All'albergo (2)

Having satisfied herself the rooms are pleasant, Frances continues the conversation.

1 What is and what is not included in the price?

2 Where is the garage?

FRANCES: Qual è il prezzo di una camera per una notte?

DIRETTORE: 105 euro, signora.

- FRANCES: E' inclusa la colazione?
- DIRETTORE: No, signora. Sono inclusi le tasse e il servizio, ma la colazione non è compresa nel prezzo.
- FRANCES: Va bene. Vado a chiamare mio marito e i nostri amici. Oh, c'è un garage?
- DIRETTORE: Sì, signora. Quando esce, giri a sinistra. Poi deve passare sotto l'arco, a sinistra. Il garage è dietro l'albergo, in fondo al cortile. Posso avere un documento, per cortesia?
- FRANCES: Ecco il mio passaporto.



Vocabulary

compreso, incluso

included (very similar in meaning, from **comprendere, includere**)

quando esce

when you go out

in fondo a

at the bottom of, at the end of

per cortesia

please (this is another way of saying 'please', as is **per piacere**)

un documento

an identification document (usually a passport or an identity card)

Language points

Using uscire **'to go out'**

esco	usciamo
esci	uscite
esce	escono

Using andare

Vado a chiamare mio marito

When you say you are going to do something, you need to use **a** after **andare**, before the second verb.

Vado a mangiare.

I am going to eat.

Andate a vedere il nuovo film?

Are you going to see the new film?

Va a lavorare.

He/she is going to work.

Exercise 2

Joe McDonald needs to book into a hotel for the night. Here is his conversation with the receptionist. Unfortunately the printer has got the order all wrong and forgotten to indicate whether Joe or the receptionist is talking. Can you sort it out so that it makes sense?

- 1 Per quante notti?
- 2 Singola o doppia?
- 3 60 euro.
- 4 Abbiamo una singola con doccia. Va bene?
- 5 E' compresa la colazione?
- 6 Ecco la chiave. E' il numero 32.
- 7 Va bene.
- 8 Buona sera. Avete una camera?

- 9 No, non è compresa.
 10 Una notte.
 11 Grazie.
 12 Posso avere un documento?
 13 Singola.
 14 Qual è il prezzo?
 15 Certo, ecco la mia carta d'identità.

Dialogue 3

Vorrei un po' di frutta

Mrs Rossi is shopping for fruit and vegetables.

- 1 The fruit seller says the small oranges have certain qualities. What are they?**
- 2 Which other fruit does she want?**
- 3 How much will her apples cost her?**

FRUTTIVENDOLO: Buongiorno, signora. Desidera?

SIG.RA ROSSI: Buongiorno. Vorrei un po' di frutta. Quanto costano le arance?

FRUTTIVENDOLO: 1 euro e 49 centesimi al chilo le grandi, 1,19 le piccole. Sono molto dolci, quelle piccole, ottime per la spremuta.

SIG.RA ROSSI: Allora, un chilo. E ho bisogno anche di banane.

FRUTTIVENDOLO: Quante?

SIG.RA ROSSI: Cinque o sei. Ecco, così va bene. E due pompelmi.

FRUTTIVENDOLO: Benissimo, signora. Altro?

SIG.RA ROSSI: Ci sono delle mele buone?

FRUTTIVENDOLO: Queste a 1,96 al chilo, del Trentino, sono molto buone.

SIG.RA ROSSI: Mezzo chilo, per favore.

FRUTTIVENDOLO: Ecco. E poi?

SIG.RA ROSSI: Basta così per oggi. Quant'è?

FRUTTIVENDOLO: 3 euro e 75 centesimi, signora.

SIG.RA ROSSI: Ecco (*giving him a 10 euro note*).

FRUTTIVENDOLO: Quattro, cinque e cinque, dieci. Grazie, signora, arrivederLa, buongiorno.

Vocabulary

ho bisogno di	I need (see below)
del Trentino	from the Trentino (in northern Italy)
basta così	that'll be all (lit. 'it's enough like that')



Shop in the Mercato di Mezzo, Bologna.
Courtesy EPT Emilia Romagna.

Language points

Using avere bisogno di

Ho bisogno di ...

avere bisogno di (lit. ‘to have need of’) corresponds to the English ‘to need’:

Ho bisogno di francobolli.

I need some (postage) stamps.

Ho bisogno di sapere la risposta.

I need to know the answer.

Hai bisogno di me?

Do you need me?

Using altro?

When asking a customer if she (he) needs anything else a shop-keeper may say **altro?** which means ‘anything else?’ in this context. **altro** is the word for ‘other’:

un altro caffè another coffee

l'altro giorno the other day

Take note of the way you say ‘two, three’ etc. and ‘more/other’:

altri due caffè two more coffees

altre tre persone three other people

Other ways of encouraging the customer to buy more are:

E poi? And then? Next?

Dopo? After (that)?

E' tutto? Is that all?

And ways of saying ‘no’ are:

No, grazie No, thank you

Basta, grazie That's all, thanks

No, basta così No (lit. ‘it’s sufficient like that’)

No, va bene così No (lit. ‘it’s all right like that’)

così means ‘in this way, in that way, thus’.

Using basta

bastare is a verb but normally used only in the third person singular and plural. It can have a specific subject:

Bastano queste banane?

Are these enough bananas?

Bastano dieci euro?

Are 10 euros enough?

Or it can be used impersonally followed by an infinitive or a noun:

Basta chiedere.

It's sufficient to ask.

(i.e. 'All you need do is ask'.)

– **E' lontano. Si può arrivare in una giornata?**

– It's a long way. Can one get there in one day?

– **Basta partire presto.**

– So long as one starts early.

(lit. 'All you need do is start early'.)

Basta telefonare.

All you need to do is telephone.

Or, from a leaflet about cancer prevention:

Basta una telefonata per prenotare una visita preventiva gratuita per te e per i tuoi cari . . .

All it needs is a telephone call to book a free check-up for you and your loved ones . . .

Weights and measures

The metric system is used in Italy, as elsewhere in Europe. For weight, the basic measures are the gram (**grammo**) and the kilogram (**chilogrammo**), 1,000 grams. Lightweight items such as ham, sweets/candies, are sold by the **etto**. **Un etto** = 100 grams, which is just under 4 oz. So you have:

un etto = 100 grammi

mezzo chilo = 5 etti = 500 grammi

un chilo = 1.000 grammi

The liquid measure is the litre:

un litro
mezzo litro
un quarto (di litro)

la frutta *'fruit'*

The word **frutta** is similar to the English collective noun 'fruit', i.e. you do not usually use it in the plural. In season, the following are commonly found (the singular is given for clarity):

l'albicocca	apricot	l'arancia	orange
la ciliegia	cherry	la fragola	strawberry
il limone	lemon	la mela	apple
il melone	melon	la pera	pear
la pesca	peach	il pompelmo	grapefruit
la prugna	plum	la susina	plum (also)
l'uva	grapes (uva is a singular noun meaning 'grapes'):		

L'uva è molto buona.
 The grapes are very good.

Un chilo di uva bianca, per piacere.
 A kilo of white grapes, please.

Plurals of nouns ending in -cia, -gia

A stressed **-i** remains in the plural:

la farmacia
le farmacie
un'allergia
molte allergie

If the **-i-** is there only to show that the **-c-** or **-g-** is soft, then:

(a) **-cia, -gia**, preceded by a vowel becomes **-cie, -gie**:

una ciliegia **un chilo di ciliegie**

(b) **-cia, -gia**, preceded by a consonant becomes **-ce, -ge**:

un'arancia **un chilo di arance**

Difficult? Yes, but we needed to tell you before the next exercise. When you are speaking Italian, in the case of (a) and (b) it makes no difference to the sound, so don't worry. But, in the next exercise, try to get it right, while it is fresh in your mind. You can always look it up when you have to write.

Exercise 3

You are at a fruit stall in a market. Ask how much the fruits listed above cost. There is one 'trick question' – watch out for it.

Dialogue 4

Ho bisogno di formaggio

Mrs Rossi is in a grocer's shop.

1 How much 'pecorino' does Mrs Rossi buy?

2 What else does she buy besides cheese?

COMMESSE: Buongiorno, signora, desidera?
 SIG.RA ROSSI: Ho bisogno di formaggio oggi. C'è del pecorino?
 COMMESSE: Dolce o piccante?
 SIG.RA ROSSI: Piccante. Tre etti.
 COMMESSE: Ecco. Altro?
 SIG.RA ROSSI: Sì. Del prosciutto crudo.
 COMMESSE: Prosciutto di Parma o nostrano?
 SIG.RA ROSSI: Quanto costano?
 COMMESSE: Il nostrano 32 euro e 90 centesimi al chilo, quello di Parma 35,60. E' molto buono quello nostrano.
 SIG.RA ROSSI: Allora lo prendo. Basta un etto.
 COMMESSE: *Slices some and then weighs it*
 120 grammi. Va bene così?
 SIG.RA ROSSI: Sì, va bene. Quant'è?
 COMMESSE: 4 euro e 30 centesimi il pecorino. E poi, 3,30 il prosciutto. 7,60 in tutto. Grazie, arriverò La.
 Buongiorno.

Cultural point

Italy boasts a wide variety of cheeses. The Po Plain produces **grana padano** and **parmigiano reggiano**, which are very similar to each other. They are both made from cow's milk and are fairly hard, depending on how long they have been matured; more importantly, maturing affects the flavour. Another popular cheese is **pecorino**, which is made with ewes' milk. According to how long it has been matured it is **dolce** 'mild' or **piccante** 'strong flavoured'. All these cheeses are used for grating as well as being delicious eaten as cheese. Grated cheese is much used in Italian cooking, on pasta, risotto, soups etc. Another very special Italian speciality is **prosciutto crudo**, cured ham. It is usually known in English as 'Parma ham' although ham is cured in a similar way in other parts of Italy; **prosciutto** can also be **cotto** 'cooked'.

Exercise 4

Say out loud and then write down in words the prices in Dialogue 4.

Language points

The partitive, 'some ...'

To express the idea 'some' ('not all') of something, you use the articulated preposition **del**, i.e. **di** + the definite article:

del formaggio	some cheese
delle mele	some apples
del prosciutto	some ham

Prices

When giving the price 'per kilo, per litre' etc. Italian uses: **al chilo**, **al litro**:

30 euro al chilo

Exercise 5

Sig.ra Rossi has made a shopping list. How would she tell the shop assistant she wants *some* of the following?

Example: **banane**

Answer: **Vorrei delle banane**

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1 limoni | 6 acqua minerale |
| 2 francobolli | 7 arance |
| 3 caffè | 8 pesche |
| 4 formaggio | 9 pane |
| 5 uva | |

Quantity

When you specify a quantity, however, you just use **di**:

un chilo di mele

un litro di vino

un po' di formaggio

un etto di prosciutto

Dialogue 5 ***Ci sono altri colori?***

*Joe, in Florence, wants to buy presents to take home. He, like many other tourists, goes to the very large street market near the church of San Lorenzo. He is looking at sweaters ('a sweater' is **una maglia**), with his young sister in mind. There is one he likes displayed on a stall.*

- 1 Who does the salesgirl assume he is buying for?**
- 2 What colour sweater catches his eye?**
- 3 Why does he take an 'L'?**

JOE: *(trying to attract the salesperson's attention)* Senta! Posso vedere quella maglia?

VENDITRICE: Sì, signore. E' molto bella, questa maglia. Fatta a mano.

- JOE: Quanto costa?
 VENDITTRICE: Solo 30 euro. E' per Sua moglie?
 JOE: No, per mia sorella. Ha 16 anni. Ci sono altri colori?
 VENDITTRICE: (*pointing to a pile of sweaters*) Sì signore. Guardi. C'è verde, rosa, blu, beige ...
 JOE: Mi piace quella verde.
 VENDITTRICE: Sua sorella, com'è? Di che misura ha bisogno?
 JOE: Le piace portare le maglie grandi.
 VENDITTRICE: Allora deve prendere una "L".
 JOE: Va bene. Prendo quella verde.

Vocabulary notes

- fatto/a a mano** 'handmade' (made by hand)
misura 'size' (used for clothes, shoes etc.)

Language point

Colours, i colori

The singular of **i colori** is **il colore**.

azzurro	blue (darker than celeste)
bianco	white
giallo	yellow
grigio	grey
nero	black
rosso	red
celeste	blue (sky blue, paler than azzurro)
arancione	orange
marrone	brown
verde	green
blu	dark or navy blue
rosa	pink
viola	violet

The colours have been grouped above according to the way the adjectives work. The ones in the first group have four forms: **rosso**, **rossa**, **rossi**, **rosse**:

buoni vini rossi good red wines

Those in the second group have two forms: **verde, verdi**:

una mela verde	one (a) green apple
due mele verdi	two green apples

Those in the last group have one form only:

una maglia blu	a dark blue sweater
due maglie blu	two dark blue sweaters

Note: chiaro 'light' (when used of a colour), also 'clear'; *scuro* 'dark'.

verde chiaro	light green	verde scuro	dark green
---------------------	-------------	--------------------	------------

Exercise 6

It takes a while to absorb verb forms. Here is some more practice. The verb is given in the infinitive. Write the correct form for the various subjects suggested. Where it might be more usual to leave the subject pronoun out, it is put in brackets.

Example: lavorare

Carlo. Carlo lavora. Anna e Paola.

Anna e Paola lavorano.

1 *comprare*

Anna, che cosa (a) _____ (tu)?

Io (b) _____ un libro.

Gianna, tu e Piero, che cosa (c) _____?

(Noi) (d) _____ una maglia per Piero.

2 *leggere*

Io (a) _____ poco. Non ho tempo.

Paolo invece (b) _____ molto.

Si dice che gli Italiani (c) _____ poco. Non so se è vero.

3 *preferire*

Io (a) _____ la maglia rossa.

Giorgio invece (b) _____ quella celeste.

4 *parlare*

Questi studenti (a) _____ russo, francese e italiano.

Io invece (b) _____ solo italiano.

Mario (c) _____ inglese e francese?

E tu? (d) _____ un'altra lingua?

5 *vivere*

Giorgio e Anna (a) _____ in città.

Noi (b) _____ in campagna.

Reading

Il mio primo computer

Il pc ideale per un bambino? Processore di ultima generazione e memoria potente. Inutile, invece, il modello più recente.

- 1 This is part of an article in a women's magazine. It is about buying a computer. For what sort of use?**
- 2 In the last sentence, what is buying a computer for the purpose described compared to?**

Con l'inizio della scuola è bene che il bambino impari a usare il pc vero e proprio, magari con mouse e tastiera semplificati. "Per un bimbo tra i 7 e gli 11 anni è sufficiente un pc di media potenza, fisso (i portatili costano di più e sono più delicati), con stampante a getto di inchiostro, cd rom, scheda audio e casse, modem per poter navigare in internet," spiega l'esperto. "Verificate che la macchina sia dotata di processore di ultima generazione e abbia una memoria Ram almeno di 128 Megabyte, meglio se è più alta, altrimenti si rischia di non poter utilizzare cd rom e giochi elettronici."

Trappole

"Non cadete nell'errore di rincorrere il modello più recente. La differenza reale tra il più potente dei pc è nell'ordine della frazione di secondo. Attenzione piuttosto alla garanzia e alla serietà del rivenditore . . . Spiegate chiaramente al venditore l'uso che intendete farne . . . E ricordate che per andare a fare la spesa non c'è bisogno della Ferrari, basta una Cinquecento."

(*Anna*, Family Life section, 18 febbraio 2003)

Vocabulary notes

inutile 'useless'. Opposite of **utile** 'useful'.

bambino, bimbo 'child'. There is a feminine form, ending in **-a**.

When used in a general way, as here, the masculine includes the feminine.

vero e proprio 'proper' (lit. 'real and proper'). An earlier part of the article, not included here, talked about toy computers for pre-school children.

dotato/a di 'equipped, provided with'

si rischia 'one risks' (**rischiare** 'to risk')

non cadete nell'errore 'don't fall into the error of . . .' (**cadere** 'to fall')

nell'ordine della frazione di secondo 'in the order of a fraction of a second'

l'uso che intendete farne 'the use you intend to make of it'

ricordate 'remember' (**ricordare** 'to remember')

Computer vocabulary notes

You will recognize as English much of Italian computer vocabulary. Here are some words you may not have been able to guess:

tastiera 'keyboard'

media potenza 'medium power'

fisso 'fixed'. In this case 'desktop'.

portatile 'portable'. An adjective used as the noun for laptop (computer).

stampante (f.) 'printer' (**stampare** 'to print')

getto di inchiostro 'ink-jet' (**laser** 'laser')

scheda audio 'audio card' (cf. **scheda telefonica**)

casce 'loudspeakers'

navigare in internet 'to surf the internet'

ultima generazione 'last generation'. We would probably say 'latest generation'.

memoria 'memory'

giochi elettronici 'computer games' (**un gioco**)

Shopping vocabulary notes

verificare 'to check'

attenzione 'be careful'

garanzia 'guarantee'

serietà 'trustworthiness' (in this context). A **rivenditore serio** is one who can be trusted.

rivenditore 'retailer' (in this context). Really a reseller, i.e. seller of second-hand goods.

venditore 'salesman'

fare la spesa 'to do the shopping'. Usually implies the regular household shopping.

Unusual verb forms

There are three examples in this passage of the present subjunctive. They need not worry you and possibly you did not notice them. They are **impari** (first line), **sia** and **abbia**. You will probably agree that the meaning is guessable. We will deal with them later in the book.

8 Un po' di geografia

A little geography

In this unit you will learn about:

- The basics of the geography of Italy
- Vocabulary for landscape and places, distances and area
- Forming the past participle e.g. cultivated, walked
- The passive
- Adverbs
- Expressing your likes – **mi piacciono, mi piacerebbe**
- Personal pronouns, indirect object form ('to me, to him')
- Using **c'è/ci sono**, 'there is/'there are'
- The 'north/south divide'

Reading 1

Un po' di geografia

On the following page is a map of Italy. Use it, and the text on p. 123, to answer the questions below.

Are the following statements true or false?

- 1 The summit of Mont Blanc is in Italy.
- 2 The highest mountains in Europe are to be found in the Apennines.
- 3 Three-quarters of Italy's land area is flat.
- 4 Water for crops is not a problem for agriculture on the Po Plain.
- 5 Milan and Turin have recently developed manufacturing industry.
- 6 The Alps are volcanic mountains.



Italy: physical

7 Etna is an extinct volcano.

8 Sicily is the southernmost island of Italy.

9 Tourism is very important to the Italian economy.

L'Italia è una penisola a forma di stivale. Montagne e colline occupano una superficie pari a oltre tre quarti del territorio italiano. L'Italia è povera di pianure.

Al nord un arco di montagne, le Alpi, la separa dai paesi confinanti. Nell'arco alpino si trovano le montagne più alte d'Europa: il Monte Bianco, m. 4,810, il Monte Rosa, m. 4,634, e il Cervino, m. 4,478, chiamato 'Matterhorn' in inglese. Di questi tre, solo il Monte Rosa ha la cima interamente in territorio italiano.

Ai piedi delle montagne si estende da ovest ad est la Pianura Padana, cioè del fiume Po. Il Po, il più grande fiume italiano, è lungo 652 km. La pianura, di gran lunga la più grande d'Italia, (46,000 km²) è irrigata dalle abbondanti acque che scendono dalle montagne. Perciò è da secoli intensamente coltivata. Sulla ricchezza di questa agricoltura fiorente è basato lo sviluppo dell'industria che è oggi l'attività economica dominante della pianura. Città come Milano e Torino hanno una lunga storia industriale; più recente è lo sviluppo eccezionale in città medie di industrie varie che vanno dall'abbigliamento e gli alimenti, ai prodotti 'high-tec'.

La pianura è chiusa a sud da un'altra catena di montagne: gli Appennini, che si allungano per 1,190 km. fino a Reggio Calabria e anche in Sicilia. Gli Appennini sono montagne vulcaniche. Tutti conoscono il nome di due vulcani italiani: il Vesuvio, attualmente inattivo, e l'Etna, ancora in attività.

La Sicilia e la Sardegna sono due grandi isole italiane. Ci sono poi numerose isole piccole, tra cui Lampedusa, a sud-ovest dell'isola di Malta, che è più vicina alle coste della Tunisia che a quelle siciliane. Il mare e le isole, con le montagne e la campagna, costituiscono mete turistiche piacevolissime. Va ricordato che il turismo è un settore importantissimo dell'economia italiana.

Vocabulary

ciò (ciò è)	that is, i.e.
di gran lunga	by far, by a long chalk
è da secoli coltivata	it has been cultivated for centuries

Vocabulary for landscape and places

paese	(1) country (e.g France, New Zealand); (2) village
confine	border, boundary
frontiera	frontier
luogo	place
posto	(1) place; (2) seat; (3) job
città	city, town (not necessarily very large)
centro	centre (often centro storico , the old, central part of a city)
periferia	outskirts, suburbs
villaggio	village (as well as paese)
frazione	outlying village of a comune
bosco	wood
cima	summit
collina	hill
costa	coast
fiume	river
isola	island
pianura	plain
spiaggia	beach
superficie	surface

Cultural point

Italy is divided into twenty administrative regions (see map on p. x). The regions have responsibility for matters such as regional planning, economic development etc., though very much under central control. Each region (**regione** (f.)) is divided into provinces (**provincia**). Provinces have more limited functions. The basic level of local administration is the municipality (**comune** (m.)). **comuni** vary immensely in size and include cities such as Rome and Milan. They are now subdivided into **circoscrizioni** (wards) in a move to involve people at local level. At each level of administration there is an elected council, which delegates executive powers to a **giunta**, composed of **assessori**. The **comune** and **giunta** are chaired by a mayor (**sindaco**). Mayors are now directly elected by the citizens.

Language points

The points of the compass

The words for the points of the compass each have corresponding adjectives:

nord – settentrionale
est – orientale

sud – meridionale
ovest – occidentale

The compass points can be combined as in English: **sud-ovest**, **nord-est**. Given the shape of Italy, it is more frequent to talk of the north and south than east and west; the north of the country and south are in fact very different. It is common to refer to the south as **il mezzogiorno** (which also means ‘south’).

Measuring distances and area

chilometro (km)
metro (m)
decimetro (dm)
centimetro (cm)
millimetro (mm)

un chilometro = mille metri
un metro = cento centimetri
un centimetro = dieci millimetri

un chilometro quadrato (1 km²) = one square kilometre
un ettaro = 100 m² = 2.471 acres

Past participles

These correspond to the English form ending in ‘-ed’ (e.g. ‘cultivated’, ‘irrigated’, ‘walked’, ‘talked’ etc.). The passage contained a number:

Questa pianura è irrigata . . .
E’ intensivamente coltivata.
Sulla ricchezza . . . è basato lo sviluppo . . .
(= lo sviluppo è basato)

The past participle is formed according to the type of verb:

-are verbs:	drop -are , add -ato :	parlare	parlato
-ere verbs:	drop -ere , add -uto :	cadere	caduto
-ire verbs:	drop -ire , add -ito :	finire	finito

In English there are irregular forms (e.g. 'thought', 'seen', 'gone'), and so there are in Italian, particularly in the second group. There is a list of common ones in the 'Grammar summary' at the end of the book.

Some past participles are often used as adjectives: **una porta aperta/chiusa** 'an open/shut door'. Past participles are much used in newspaper headlines:

Città inondata, ospedale evacuato

City flooded, hospital evacuated

Sulla riforma, governo battuto due volte.

Government beaten twice on the reform.

Cultural point

You may like to try reading some Italian newspapers, especially the section called **cronaca**, which contains news items of a non-political sort (crime, road accidents etc.), as a way of getting language practice. Start with the headlines. Newspapers tend to be relatively local in Italy. The best known are probably *Il Corriere della Sera*, the Milan daily, and *La Stampa*, the Turin daily; both date back to the nineteenth century. Much more recent is *La Repubblica*, a national paper founded in the late twentieth century. *Il Sole 24 Ore* is business orientated; whereas the *Gazzetta dello Sport* is what it says it is, a sports daily.

The passive

The passive is formed with **essere** and a past participle, just as in English it is formed with 'to be' and the past participle:

La pianura è coltivata.

The plain is cultivated.

Lo sviluppo è basato sulla ricchezza dell'agricoltura.

Development is based on the wealth of the agriculture.

Il servizio è incluso.

Service is included.

Note: The past participle agrees with the subject, behaving like an adjective.

To say who or what things were done by, i.e. to express the agent, use **da**:

L'albergo è gestito dal proprietario.

The hotel is managed by the owner.

La pianura è circondata da montagne.

The plain is surrounded by mountains.

A common use is after **deve essere, può essere**:

Il lavoro deve essere finito domani.

The work must be finished tomorrow

Exercise 1

You are a busy executive and are getting your secretary organized. How will you tell him/her:

- 1 The fax must be sent this morning.
(**spedire un fax**)
- 2 The meeting can be organized for Monday.
(**organizzare una riunione**)
- 3 The hotel can be booked by telephone.
(**prenotare un albergo**)
- 4 The booking can be confirmed by fax.
(**confermare una prenotazione**)
- 5 The tickets must be collected at midday.
(**ritirare i biglietti**)
- 6 Rome can be informed by fax.
(**informare Roma via fax**)
- 7 The taxi can be called in (**fra**) 10 minutes.
(**chiamare un taxi**)

You need not worry too much about the passive as it works the same way as the passive in English. It tends to belong to formal language. We shall meet it and the past participle again. However, don't forget *impersonal si*. We met it in Unit 4 and it often conveys ideas which in English would be in the passive:

Qui si parla italiano.

Italian is spoken here.

Come si scrive questa parola?

How is this word written/spelt?

Cultural point

Several times in the year a public holiday falls close to a weekend and Italians, and others working in Italy, like to make a long weekend of it, taking a holiday on the days between the weekend and the public holiday. This is called: **fare il ponte**, making a bridge.

Dialogue 1

Fare il ponte nel Bel Paese

Here, George, an American working temporarily in Milan, asks a colleague for advice about how he and Jane, his wife, might spend the long weekend.

- 1 Why does George ask Andrea for advice?
- 2 What does George want to avoid?
- 3 What conflict is there between George's and Jane's interests?
- 4 In which town is there a Roman arena?
- 5 What is the name of the really restful place Andrea suggests?

GEORGE: Senti, Andrea, mi puoi dare un consiglio? Vorrei suggerimenti per il fine settimana del 25 aprile. Jane ed io abbiamo pensato di fare il ponte e partire per quattro o cinque giorni. Tu che conosci bene l'Italia, che cosa mi suggerisci? Vogliamo a tutti i costi andare via e cambiare aria.

ANDREA: Cosa preferite, città o campagna? Un lago forse? O il mare? C'è anche la montagna.

GEORGE: A Jane piace visitare le città. S'interessa molto di architettura, di cose antiche. Io vorrei riposarmi, non vorrei passare troppo tempo in macchina. E mi piacciono di più i posti tranquilli, i paesi piccoli, i panorami belli.

ANDREA: Perché non andate nel Veneto?

GEORGE: Conosciamo già Venezia e ci piacerebbe evitare posti troppo affollati.

ANDREA: Appunto. Nel Veneto puoi trovare città per Jane e posti più tranquilli per te. Ad esempio, Verona è una città vivacissima, ricca di monumenti.



Verona, the Roman Arena. Courtesy Archivio Provincia di Verona.

- GEORGE: Davvero? Che cosa c'è da vedere a Verona?
- ANDREA: C'è l'Arena, un anfiteatro romano, c'è la chiesa di S. Zeno, romanica, bellissima; ci sono anche altri monumenti e tanti angoli pittoreschi. Poi potreste continuare verso Vicenza e vedere qualche opera del Palladio.* Per te c'è Marostica, una cittadina medievale; c'è Asolo, un posto veramente riposante, in una bellissima posizione in collina. E poi . . .
- GEORGE: Vedo che non mancano le possibilità; grazie.

* Palladio was a Renaissance architect.

Language points

Using -issimo/-issima

bellissimo/bellissima

Often, instead of using the word **molto** to convey the idea 'very', Italians use **-issimo/-issima**. Just remove the final vowel of the adjective and add **-issimo/-issima**.

Exercise 2

Jane and George are telling someone about their weekend. George echoes everything Jane says.

Example: J: **Verona è una città molto interessante.**
G: **Interessantissima.**

J: Il Veneto è molto bello.

G: (1) _____

J: Marostica è una cittadina molto simpatica.

G: (2) _____

J: Asolo è un posto molto tranquillo.

G: (3) _____

J: Le ville del Palladio sono molto eleganti.

G: (4) _____

J: E' stato un weekend molto piacevole.

G: (5) _____

Expressing your likes

mi piacciono

You will remember **mi piace** (see Unit 2) means 'it is pleasing to me'. Therefore when it is a *plural* thing you like, for example, quiet places (as George does), then you have to say 'quiet places are pleasing to me', **mi piacciono i posti tranquilli**.

Exercise 4

How would you say you like:

- 1 Roma
- 2 le montagne
- 3 visitare monumenti storici
- 4 le isole piccolissime
- 5 questi spaghetti (**spaghetti** are plural, as you can see from the form and the adjective, **questi**)

But what about talking about *other* people's likes? You need to be able to say 'it is/they are pleasing to you, to him' etc. Here's how:

<p>mi ti gli le ci vi gli</p>	}	piace/piacciono
--	---	------------------------

These pronouns are called *indirect object pronouns*: 'pronouns' because they stand instead of nouns, 'indirect object' because they contain the idea 'to me', not simply 'me'. To express this particular idea in English, we have a direct object: 'I like *it*'. But remember that in Italian what you are saying is 'it is pleasing *to me*'.

Exercise 5

How would you ask: (a) a friend (i.e. using **tu**); (b) an acquaintance (i.e. using **Lei**); (c) two people (using **voi**):

- 1 Do you like Italian wines?
- 2 Do you like Venice?
- 3 Do you like studying Italian?

mi piacerebbe

This means ‘it would be pleasing to me’: in other words ‘I should like’. It is the same tense of the verb you met in **vorrei** ‘I should like’. They are very similar in meaning, but you will usually use **vorrei** when choosing/asking for things (e.g. when making purchases, ordering drinks, food etc.). **mi piacerebbe** has a plural form for use when what you would like is plural: **mi piacerebbero**.

You can talk about what *other* people would like in the same way as with **piace**:

mi	}	piacerebbe/piacerebbero
ti		
gli		
le		
ci		
vi		
gli		

mi piacerebbe is frequently followed by verbs:

Mi piacerebbe visitare le isole Tremiti.

Ci piacerebbe vedere il Vesuvio.

Exercise 6

(a) Here are some things you might like to do when you are in Italy. Translate these sentences:

- 1 Mi piacerebbe vedere il Campidoglio.
- 2 Mi piacerebbe andare in gondola a Venezia.
- 3 Mi piacerebbe gettare una moneta nella fontana di Trevi.
- 4 Mi piacerebbe assistere ad una gara di Formula 1 a Imola.
- 5 Mi piacerebbe sciare sulle pendici dell’Etna.
- 6 Mi piacerebbe visitare Pompei ed Ercolano.
- 7 Mi piacerebbe vedere lo Stromboli, il vulcano nelle isole Eolie.

(b) Now add some suggestions of your own.

Using qualche ‘some’

Qualche opera del Palladio

This means ‘some works by Palladio’. **qualche** means *some* but it is always followed by a singular noun:

qualche volta	sometimes
qualche libro	some books
qualche cosa	something (often abbreviated to: qualcosa)

One use of da

Che cosa c'è da vedere a Verona?

Note this use of the preposition **da** (see Unit 6). Similarly:

Cosa c'è da fare?

What is there to do?

C'è qualcosa da mangiare?

Is there something to eat?

Cosa prende da bere?

What will you have to drink?

Using c'è, ci sono

These mean 'there is, there are': **c'è** is the same as **ci è**.

A Verona c'è un teatro romano.

A Venezia ci sono tanti canali.

Exercise 7

Here is a list of some of the interesting places and artefacts to be seen in the little Tuscan town of Cortona. Answer the question: **A Cortona, che cosa c'è da vedere?**, deciding whether you should say **c'è** or **ci sono**. Translate your answers.

- 1 Il lampadario etrusco nel Museo dell'Accademia Etrusca.
- 2 La via Crucis a mosaico di Gino Severini.¹
- 3 Le strade pittoresche del quartiere alto della città.
- 4 Il panorama sulla Val di Chiana.
- 5 Le opere del pittore Luca Signorelli.²
- 6 La fortezza Medicea.
- 7 I dipinti del Beato Angelico³ nel Museo Diocesano.

1 **Gino Severini**, 1883–1966, was also born in Cortona although he lived and worked mostly in Paris.

2 **Luca Signorelli**, 1445–1523, was born in Cortona.

3 **Il Beato Angelico**, a Dominican monk and painter, c. 1400–1455, is usually known in English as ‘Fra Angelico’.

Reading 2

Nord–Sud

- 1 **What is the essence of the problem of the south?**
- 2 **What six differences between north and south are quoted as lying behind the economic differences?**
- 3 **Why might tourists be attracted to the south?**

Il “problema del mezzogiorno” è da anni un’ importante questione della politica italiana. In che cosa consiste il problema? Nel fatto che il sud è in genere più povero del nord.

Perché? Ci sono tanti motivi: una storia diversa, costumi diversi, un clima diverso, terreno diverso, una più lunga e più diffusa industrializzazione nel nord . . . perfino il fatto che il sud è più lontano dal centro economico dell’Europa. Non solo questo, ma la forma allungata e montagnosa dell’Italia rende difficile i collegamenti nord-sud. In più, il crimine organizzato è senza dubbio un forte freno allo sviluppo economico del Mezzogiorno. Il problema è molto complesso e sembra difficile da risolvere.

Per il turista però le differenze sono altre. Il sud è ricco di resti dell’antica civiltà greca, ad esempio. Ci sono città e villaggi affascinanti, paesaggi e coste bellissime e tra la gente un calore umano che forse si perde in una società più prospera.

9 Buon appetito

Enjoy your meal

In this unit you will learn about:

- Italian food
- Ordering a meal
- Object pronouns, direct and indirect, e.g. 'me, her, them', 'to me, to her, to them'
- **Come mai?** 'How's that?', 'How come?'
- Making your point clear – those little words
- **viene fatto, va fatto** – 'it's done, it should be done' – another form of the passive
- **ci vuole, ci vogliono** 'you need, one needs'

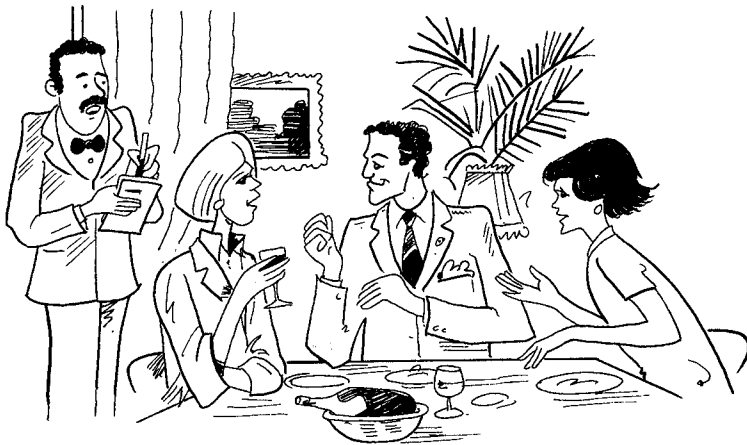
Dialogue 1

Al ristorante

*Mr and Mrs Rossi have taken Angela to one of their favourite restaurants. They are just finishing their **antipasto**.*

- 1 Why does signora Rossi say ham and melon is good in the summer?**
- 2 How does the waiter describe the fish?**
- 3 In spite of its name, 'manzo alla California' is a speciality of an Italian region according to the waiter. Which one?**

ANGELA: E' molto saporito questo prosciutto. Mi piace moltissimo prosciutto e melone.
SIG.RA ROSSI: Sì, d'estate è buono, è leggero.
CAMERIERE: (*taking plates away*) E come primo, cosa prendete, signori?



- SIG. ROSSI: (*consulting the menu*) Cosa prende per primo, signora? Ci sono i tortellini, il risotto, gli gnocchi, le tagliatelle al pomodoro e basilico, al pesto . . .
- ANGELA: (*looking at her copy*) Per me il passato di verdura.
- SIG.RA ROSSI: Buona scelta. Lo prendo anch'io. E tu, Massimo?
- SIG. ROSSI: Per me, il risotto.
- CAMERIERE: E come secondo? Abbiamo dell'ottimo pesce stasera. Oppure c'è un arrosto di vitello speciale . . .
- ANGELA: Che cosa è il 'manzo alla California'?
- CAMERIERE: E' una specialità lombarda, signora. E' uno stufato di manzo cotto molto lentamente con aceto di vino e panna. (*They make their selection.*)

Vocabulary

- prosciutto e melone** Parma ham and melon (considered a dish, hence the singular verb)
- passato di verdura** sieved or liquidized vegetable soup
- uno stufato di manzo** a beef stew

It is assumed readers have eaten pasta and know dishes such as **tortellini**, **gnocchi**; they are virtually untranslatable but any book on Italian food will explain them.

Cultural point

i pasti del giorno ‘the meals of the day’ for Italians are **prima colazione** breakfast, which some have at home: coffee or hot chocolate, or perhaps tea, plus biscuits, bread and jam – quite simple. The main meal of the day is **pranzo**, sometimes eaten in the evening. In that case the midday meal is often called **colazione**. Supper is **cena**. There are regional variations and of course living in a big city implies different rhythms, dictated by travelling times, from those enjoyed by people in less congested areas. Children usually have a snack between lunch and supper, called **la merenda**. **uno spuntino** is a snack taken by adults between meals or can be instead of a meal, for instance a quick snack lunch.

An Italian main meal (lunch or dinner) normally consists of **il primo** (pasta, rice or soup), followed by **il secondo** (a meat or fish course, which is accompanied by a **contorno** (vegetable)). A celebration meal or a meal out in a restaurant starts with **antipasto**, then **il primo**, then sometimes fish, and then the meat course. Bread, **il pane**, is an essential accompaniment. A family meal often finishes with cheese and/or fruit. A **dolce** (dessert) is served on special occasions. Weight- and health-conscious Italians are tending to cut down on the number of courses in a meal nowadays. Feel free to skip a course from time to time in a restaurant. When your hostess has gone to the trouble of cooking it, it is rather more delicate a matter – and often too delicious to resist.

More vocabulary notes for meals and food

verdure	‘vegetables’
ristorante	‘restaurant’ (usually fairly big)
trattoria	‘restaurant’ (small, usually family-run)
pizzeria	specializes in pizza but often offers other dishes, particularly pasta
tavola calda	serves ‘fast food’, Italian-style, to take away, or to eat in the shop
self-service	just what it says: the food is usually good

There is a wide variety of fish available. Names are sometimes local – you’ll have to be bold and take a chance.

Alla carta

Secondi piatti

carne	meat	pollo	chicken
vitello	veal	tacchino	turkey
manzo	beef	maiale	pork
agnello	lamb	bistecca	steak
pesce	fish	trota	trout
salmone	salmon	calamaro	squid

Contorni

carote	carrots	cipolle	onions
fagioli	beans (dried)	fagiolini	French beans
funghi	mushrooms	melanzane	aubergine, eggplant
porcini	porcini, <i>ceps</i> *	piselli	peas
peperoncini	chillies	peperoni	peppers
patate	potatoes	pomodori	tomatoes
spinaci (pl.)	spinach	zucchini	baby marrows
insalata	mixed salad	insalata	green salad
mista		verde	

Vocabulary

odori	herbs	tartufo	truffle
aglio	garlic	sale	salt
basilico	basil	pepe	pepper
maggiorana	marjoram	aceto	vinegar
prezzemolo	parsley	olio d'oliva	olive oil
rosmarino	rosemary		
salvia	sage	al forno	roast, in the oven
timo	thyme	bollito	stewed
		alla griglia	grilled
panna	cream	stufato	a stew
polenta[†]		arrosto	a roast
riso	rice		

* *Bolelus edulis*.

† Polenta is made with maize flour and was once the staple diet of northern Italy. It is a thick, solid paste which is cooked and then sliced. Nowadays it is served with meat or fish dishes.

cucinare to prepare food, cook – a person does this to food
cuocere to be subjected to heat etc., to cook – food does this

alla fiorentina, alla veneziana, alla milanese etc. mean prepared Florentine-, Venetian- or Milanese-style. Menus can be difficult to understand, partly because cooking varies from region to region and partly because imaginative cooks invent dishes. Don't be afraid to ask for explanations.

Direct object pronouns ('him, her, it, them')

Signora Rossi, hearing Angela order the vegetable soup, says:

Buona idea. *La* prendo anch'io.

A good idea. I'll have *it* too.

See also Unit 5: Joe, choosing a map, said:

***La* prendo.**

I'll have it.

Here are some more examples:

Dov'è il giornale? Non *lo* vedo.

Where is the newspaper? I can't see *it*.

Giorgio non vuole venire stasera. *Lo* capisco.

Giorgio doesn't want to come this evening. I understand *him*.

Cerco i miei occhiali. Non *li* trovo.

I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find *them*.

Mi piacciono molto le lasagne al forno. *Le* prendo.

I love lasagne. I'll have *them*.

I miei nonni abitano qui vicino. *Li* vediamo quasi ogni giorno.

My grandparents live near here. We see *them* nearly every day.

Do you see the way the pronoun works? It depends whether the noun being replaced is masculine or feminine, singular or plural.

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
Masculine	lo	him, it	li	them
Feminine	la	her, it	le	them

Notice also that the pronoun is placed *before* the verb.

You have already met the *indirect object* pronouns. The difficulty for most English-speaking people is to understand the idea of *direct* and *indirect object*. Here are a couple of examples in English. Are the words in *italic* direct or indirect objects?

He sees *me*.

He speaks *to me*.

They know *her*.

They talk *to her*.

In the first column you have a direct object, in the second, an indirect. The direct object is directly affected by the action of the verb; the indirect object has a preposition before the pronoun. A more complicated case in English would be:

They gave it to me.

What is *it* and what is *to me*, grammatically? They are direct and indirect objects respectively. *It* was given. I benefited indirectly – it was given *to me*.

Exercise 1

You are having a meal in a restaurant. Your host asks you whether you like various dishes. Say you do and that you will have it.

Example: HOST: **C'è prosciutto e melone come antipasto.
Le piace?**

YOU: **Sì, mi piace. Lo prendo.**

HOST: Come primo ci sono lasagne al forno. Le piacciono?

YOU: (1) _____

HOST: Come secondo c'è bistecca alla fiorentina. Le piace?

YOU: (2) _____

HOST: E come contorno, ci sono spinaci. Le piacciono?

YOU: (3) _____

Exercise 2

Things are being very irritating. You can't see them, you can't find them, you can't understand them – and you are getting into quite a state. You need help (**aiuto**). Here is what you say, in English. But your Italian friend won't understand if you say it that way, so say it in Italian.

Where's Mary's letter? I can't find it. And the magazine?
I can't see it. Where are the stamps for the postcards?
I can't find them. Can you see the pen? I can't find it.
And this bill (**conto**), I don't understand it. Help!

More about object pronouns

The indirect object pronouns are:

mi	to me	ci	to us
ti	to you	vi	to you
gli	to him	gli	to them
le	to her, to you		

mi, ti, ci, vi, are also *direct object pronouns*:

mi	me	ci	us
ti	you	vi	you

So the problem of difference arises only in the third person:

lo	him	gli	to him
la	her	le	to her
La	you	Le	to you
li	them (m.)	gli	to them (m. and f.)
le	them (f.)		

Note: Confusion between **gli** singular and plural doesn't arise because you only use a pronoun when you have used a noun immediately previously. Some grammar books will mention a plural indirect object pronoun, **loro**, but it is rarely used in speech.

What did you notice about the position of the object pronoun, whether direct or indirect? It usually goes just before the verb:

Carla	mi/ti/lo/la/ci/vi/li/le	conosce molto bene
Carla	mi/ti/gli/le/ci/vi/gli	scrive ogni settimana

Note: When **loro** is used, it must follow the verb: **Carla scrive loro**.

Exercise 3

Here are some sentences very similar to ones you have met. In each case, translate the pronoun (which has been left in English).

- 1 Mio figlio abita a Toronto. _____ scrive ogni domenica. (to me)
Quando arriva la lettera _____ leggo sempre tre o quattro volte.
(it)
- 2 Il signor Marini _____ conosce bene. (us) _____ dà qualche volta delle riviste italiane. (to us)
- 3 (Al telefono) _____ passo subito il signor Anselmi. (to you, formal)
- 4 Per la riunione _____ va bene giovedì? (to you, informal)
- 5 Anna è una mia carissima amica. _____ vedo quasi ogni settimana. (her)
- 6 L'autobus _____ porta in centro. _____ lascia proprio davanti al municipio. (you)

For question 6, try to do each sort: informal singular, formal singular, and the plural – i.e. the object pronouns corresponding to **tu**, **Lei** and **voi**.

Exercise 4

How would you say the following to an Italian friend?

- 1 Signor Galli knows me well. I see him every week. He telephones me often.
- 2 Do you know Mr and Mrs Fabrizi? Do you like them? I see them every Sunday. I speak to them on the telephone almost every day.
- 3 I am writing you a letter. I am sending you the photos (**le foto**) of Gianni.

Dialogue 2

La cucina italiana

Angela enjoys cooking. She asks signora Rossi about Italian food.

- 1 **Why, according to Mrs Rossi, is it difficult to talk about Italian cooking?**
- 2 **Why do they use rice a lot in the Po Plain?**

3 What does Mrs Rossi say Sicily produces well?**4 Why is olive oil not used in the cooking of Lombardy?****5 What is used in its place?**

SIG.RA R: Veramente parlare di ‘cucina italiana’ è difficile. Ancora oggi la cucina è diversa da una regione all’altra.

ANGELA: Ah, sì? Come mai?

SIG.RA R: Dev’essere la geografia, penso; cioè il clima e il terreno. Ad esempio, qui nella Pianura Padana, c’è molta acqua e ci sono risaie. Così si mangiano piatti a base di riso, come il risotto alla milanese. Invece, la Sicilia è molto più arida, ma anche più calda. Produce verdure buonissime, frutta, agrumi. Allora si usano questi in cucina.

ANGELA: Certo, capisco. Ci dev’essere una differenza di clima notevole tra la Sicilia e la Lombardia.

SIG.RA R: Sì. Qui abbiamo anche bestiame e naturalmente carne molto buona e latte, panna, formaggi e così via. Ma non abbiamo olive, così nella nostra cucina il burro viene usato più spesso. In quella siciliana si usa quasi esclusivamente l’olio di oliva. Anche in tutta l’Italia centrale si usa l’olio di oliva.

CAMERIERE: (*bringing the pasta course, **il primo***) I passati di verdura? Per chi sono?

SIG.RA R: Per la signora e per me. (*Attention turns to the **primo**.*)

Vocabulary

piatti a base di riso	dishes based on rice
così via	and so on

Language points**Come mai? ‘How’s that?’, ‘How come?’**

Come mai? means ‘How’s that?’, ‘Why?’, ‘How come?’. The expression implies surprise as well as asking ‘why’. A simple ‘why’ is **perché?**

Making your point clear

When we talk or write, we use various words to clarify and structure what we are saying or writing. They catch the ear of the foreign learner since they seem to crop up frequently and he/she wonders what they mean. Such words:

- (a) clarify – **ciò** ‘that is, i.e.’: **Dev’essere la geografia, penso: ciò il clima e il terreno;**
- (b) exemplify – **ad esempio** ‘for example’ (the **d** is added to **a** because of the vowel that follows, but this is optional, a question of style; the same can be done with **e** ‘and’);
- (c) contrast – **invece** ‘on the other hand, instead’;
- (d) indicate the consequences – **dunque** ‘therefore, so’; **così** ‘so, thus’: **così si mangiano piatti a base di riso; così** also means ‘in this way’ (for example, **Così fan tutte** ‘All women behave this way’; here **fan** is an abbreviation for **fanno**).

Other words of this sort include **comunque** ‘anyway, however’, often used to introduce a final remark that is seen as concluding the argument:

So che non ti piace e che è difficile; comunque il direttore lo vuole così. Non c’è scelta.

I know you don’t like it and that it’s difficult. However the director wants it that way. There’s no choice.

Look out for others. They often have very minimal meaning.

Saying how things are done

viene fatto così

When saying how things are generally done, it is common to use **venire** plus the past participle rather than **essere**. (See Unit 8 – the passive – but don’t forget impersonal/indefinite **si** – Unit 4.)

Il burro viene usato spesso nella cucina settentrionale.

Butter is often used in northern cookery.

va fatto

When saying what should be done it is usual to use **andare** + past participle:

L'ambiente naturale va conservato.

The natural environment should be preserved.

Il vino bianco va bevuto fresco.

White wine should be drunk chilled.

In discussions, you will hear:

Va ricordato che . . . It should be remembered that . . .

Va detto che . . . It should be said that . . .

Dialogue 3 **Una ricetta**

In the restaurant Angela pursues the topic of Italian food.

- 1 What kind of recipe does Angela ask for?**
- 2 What are the ingredients for the dish Mrs Rossi describes?**
- 3 What additions does she say would make it more authentically Sicilian?**

ANGELA: Signora Rossi, si vede che Lei sa molto sulla cucina italiana. Avrebbe qualche buona ricetta da darmi? Mi piace molto la pasta.

SIG.RA R: Conosco una ricetta siciliana molto buona. In Sicilia la pasta viene spesso servita mescolata con verdure. Il piatto si chiama “pasta con i broccoli” o in dialetto siciliano: “pasta chi vruoccoli”. Io lo preparo così: ci vogliono olio, aglio, broccoli, maccheroni e parmigiano. Butto i broccoli in acqua bollente salata. Una volta cotti, li tolgo dall’acqua e li metto in una zuppiera con olio di oliva, aglio e parmigiano. Metto la pasta nell’acqua dei broccoli. Quando la pasta è cotta, la scolo e la metto sui broccoli, mescolando velocemente. Mmm, buoni, buoni . . .

ANGELA: Grazie. Provo la ricetta appena torno a casa.

SIG.RA R: Per fare un piatto autenticamente siciliano ci vuole anche un po' di peperoncino. Si possono aggiungere anche acciughe o sardine e perfino uva passa e pinoli. Ma così come lo faccio, piace alla mia famiglia.

Vocabulary

si vede che	it's clear that (lit. 'one can see that')
avrebbe qualche buona ricetta da darmi?	would you have some good recipes to give me?
mescolata (mescolare)	mixed (to mix)
parmigiano	Parmesan cheese (it goes without saying here that it is grated)
butto	I throw
acqua bollente salata	boiling salted water
una volta cotti	once they are cooked
li tolgo (togliere) dall'acqua	I take them out of the water
li metto in una zuppiera	I put them in a soup tureen
mescolando	tossing, mixing
si possono aggiungere acciughe e sardine	anchovies and sardines can be added (plural verb)

Language point

Using *ci vuole, ci vogliono* 'you need, one needs'

ci vuole un po' di peperoncino
ci vogliono olio, aglio, broccoli ecc.

The expression means 'you need, one needs', but it is impersonal. If what is needed is singular, you use **ci vuole**, if it is plural, **ci vogliono**.

Per arrabbiarsi ci vogliono 65 muscoli, per sorridere solo 19.
Fa' economia, sorridi!

To get angry you need 65 muscles, to smile only 19.

Economize, smile!

(Handwritten notice commonly seen in offices etc.)

si può, si possono work in a similar way – see the conversation above.

10 Buone vacanze

Have a good holiday

In this unit you will learn about:

- Talking about holidays
- Saying where you've been
- The family
- Possessive adjectives ('my, his, our')
- Saying how old someone is
- Talking about the weather
- Saying something's about to happen
- Exclamations

Dialogue 1

Vacanze in Sicilia

Enrico bumps into his friend Aldo whom he hasn't seen for a few weeks.

- 1 Why is Aldo feeling so well?**
- 2 Why is Enrico surprised to learn what he has been doing?**
- 3 What does Aldo recommend to Enrico and why?**
- 4 What are Enrico's holiday plans?**
- 5 Aldo's children seem to intend to spend their holidays very constructively. What are their plans?**

ENRICO: Ciao, Aldo, come va? E' un po' che non ti vedo.

ALDO: Infatti, sono appena tornato dalle vacanze. E perciò sto benissimo.

ENRICO: Come mai le vacanze così presto? Siamo solo al 15 maggio. Tu di solito vai all'estero in agosto.

- ALDO: Ma quest'anno non siamo andati all'estero, siamo rimasti in Italia. Siamo andati in Sicilia. Per questo siamo partiti così presto, per evitare il gran caldo.
- ENRICO: Capisco. Il tempo è stato bello?
- ALDO: Sì, bellissimo. Non troppo caldo, ma un cielo sempre sereno.
- ENRICO: E la Sicilia? Non la conosco.
- ALDO: Guarda, è una meraviglia. C'è tanto da vedere, dai templi greci ad Agrigento al duomo di Cefalù. E poi dei paesaggi incantevoli e un mare spettacolare. E si mangia bene, i vini sono ottimi. Dovresti andarci anche tu con Anna.
- ENRICO: Forse l'anno prossimo. Anche noi quest'anno rimaniamo in Italia. Andiamo nel Gargano a luglio. E i ragazzi, sono venuti con voi? O sono rimasti qui per la scuola?
- ALDO: Per la prima volta non sono venuti con noi. Anche per questo siamo potuti partire presto. Infatti i figli sono grandi ormai e quest'estate vanno via per conto loro. Marco ha 16 anni e va a fare un corso di inglese in Irlanda. Maria invece va in Francia a fare un corso di vela.



The Greek temple at Segesta.

Vocabulary

è un po' che non ti vedo	I haven't seen you for a while
sono appena tornato	I've just come back
all'estero	abroad
dovresti andarci anche tu	you ought to go there too
per conto loro	on their own (account)

Language points

Talking about where you've been, il passato prossimo

To talk about what you did in the past, or have done recently, you use a tense called the **passato prossimo** 'the near past', usually called the *present perfect* in English. For verbs that refer to coming, going, arriving, departing, staying, the **passato prossimo** is formed with the present tense of **essere** and the past participle:

Sono appena tornato dalle vacanze.

I have just come back from holiday.

Non siamo andati all'estero.

We didn't go abroad.

Siamo rimasti in Italia.

We stayed in Italy.

Siamo partiti così presto.

We went away so early.

Il tempo è stato bello.

The weather was lovely.

Non sono venuti con noi.

They didn't come with us.

Note: This is not the same as the passive. Only *transitive* verbs, verbs that can have a direct object, can be used in the passive. (**Scrivo una lettera. La lettera è scritta da me.**) The verbs we are looking at here cannot have a direct object: they are *intransitive*. In Italian it is impossible to say **vado la città**; you have to say **vado alla città** or **in città**. You need a preposition: the object is not a direct but an indirect object. The past participle does however agree with the subject in the same way as in the passive:

Enrico è andato	}	in Sicilia
Maria è andata		
I bambini sono andati		
Le signore sono andate		

Commonly used verbs that make their past in this way are: **andare**, **venire**, **arrivare**, **partire**, **entrare**, **uscire**, **salire**, **scendere**, **nascere**, **morire**, **rimanere**, **restare**, **essere**, all verbs to do with *movement* or *a state* or *change of state*. The following have irregular past participles:

venire	venuto	nascere	nato
rimanere	rimasto	morire	morto

Warning: The **passato prossimo** can be translated into English by more than one English tense, according to circumstances (see the examples above: ‘I have just come back . . .’, ‘we went away . . .’). The tense systems of Italian and English are different and it is unhelpful to hope to think from one language to the other on a ‘one-to-one’ basis. It’s not like putting sentences into a code. For example, in the present tense **mangio** can mean ‘I eat’ or ‘I am eating’. It is more helpful to try to understand the way the system of tenses works in Italian. Remember: the **passato prossimo** is used for a completed action or event in the past. Here are some more examples:

Ieri mattina sono andato a trovare Carla. Il pomeriggio sono rimasto a casa e Giorgio è venuto a parlare del nuovo progetto. La sera io, lui e le nostre mogli siamo andati a vedere il nuovo film.

Yesterday morning I went to see Carla. In the afternoon I stayed at home and Giorgio came to talk about the new project. In the evening I, he and our wives went to see the new film.

- **Non siete venuti alla festa sabato?**
- **No, siamo andati a Parigi e siamo tornati solo ieri sera.**
- You didn’t come to the party on Saturday.
- No, we went to Paris and we only got back yesterday evening.
- **Dov’è Giorgio?**
- **E’ sceso in cantina a prendere il vino. Arriva subito – eccolo.**
- Where’s Giorgio?
- He’s gone down to the cellar to get the wine. He’ll be here straight away – here he is.

Exercise 1

You've been away for a couple of days and, on your return, you bump into a friend at the airport. Complete the conversation below. To help you where the subject might be unclear the pronoun has been indicated between square brackets. It would not normally be used, omit it.

- AMICO: Ciao, come stai? Da dove arrivi?
 TU: [Io] (1 essere) a Zurigo per affari. E tu?
 AMICO: [Io] (2 andare) in Svezia per lavoro.
 TU: (3 andare)[tu] da solo?
 AMICO: No, (4 andare) [io] con due colleghi. (5 partire) [noi] insieme ma loro (6 rimanere) a Stoccolma per altri due giorni.

Exercise 2

Here is a report of a visit by a team from another company that took place last week. They came to discuss a joint venture the two companies are hoping to undertake together. Choose the correct forms for the verbs. They must be in the **passato prossimo**.

La delegazione (1) (*arrivare*) il 20 giugno. L'amministratore delegato (2) (*andare*) all'aeroporto a dare il benvenuto ai membri della delegazione. Poi questi (3) (*andare*) in albergo. Il primo incontro formale (4) (*essere*) molto cordiale ma quando (5) (*arrivare*) alla questione del finanziamento (6) (*venire*) fuori varie difficoltà.

Vocabulary

La mia famiglia

il nonno	grandfather	la nonna	grandmother
il padre	father	la madre	mother
il fratello	brother	la sorella	sister
il figlio	son	la figlia	daughter
lo zio	uncle	la zia	aunt
il cugino	cousin (m.)	la cugina	cousin (f.)
il nipote	nephew, grandson	la nipote	niece, granddaughter
il marito	husband	la moglie	wife

il cognato	brother-in-law	la cognata	sister-in-law
il suocero	father-in-law	la suocera	mother-in-law
il genero	son-in-law	la nuora	daughter-in-law

Plurals

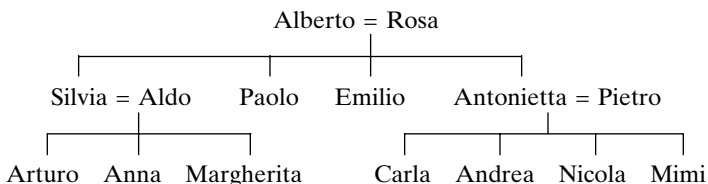
i nonni	grandparents
i genitori	parents
i parenti	relations (not just mother and father, see above)
i fratelli	brothers, or brothers and sisters
le sorelle	sisters
i figli	sons, or sons and daughters
le figlie	daughters
gli zii	uncles or uncles and aunts
le zie	aunts

Cultural point

Nipote can be both nephew/niece and grandson/granddaughter. Many people use the form **nipotino, nipotina** for ‘grandson, granddaughter’. For ‘boyfriend, girlfriend’ it is usual to use the words **ragazzo, ragazza** (which also mean ‘boy, girl’). When there is a formal intention to marry, then **fidanzato, fidanzata** ‘fiancé(e)’, is used. And note that when talking in the plural, the masculine can include the feminine too, e.g. **fratelli** can be ‘brothers and sisters’ or just ‘brothers’ (see also: **gli zii, i figli**). On the other hand **sorelle** can only be ‘sisters’ (see p. 154).

Exercise 3

Here is a family tree. Complete the sentences below with the correct word.



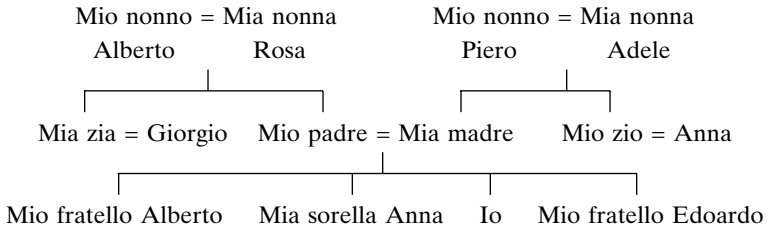
Note: **Andrea** = Andrew; **Nicola** = Nicholas – i.e. they are boys’ names.

Example: **Emilio è il figlio di Alberto.**

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Nicola è _____ di Carla. | 6 Antonietta è _____ di Arturo. |
| 2 Andrea è _____ di Rosa. | 7 Rosa è _____ di Alberto. |
| 3 Anna è _____ di Paolo. | 8 Paolo è _____ di Arturo. |
| 4 Margherita è _____ di Aldo. | 9 Anna è _____ di Margherita. |
| 5 Aldo è _____ di Pietro. | 10 Aldo è _____ di Silvia. |

Exercise 4

Carlo has drawn his family tree (**albero genealogico**).



Draw your family tree and label it for an Italian friend.

Possessive adjectives

When Carlo refers to his relations he writes:

mio fratello mio nonno mia sorella mio padre

This usage is in fact an *exception*, used when you are talking about family members in the singular. Here are some examples of how you usually express possession:

La mia famiglia è grande.

My family is large.

Le mie sorelle sono sposate.

My sisters are married.

I tuoi nonni, dove abitano?

Where do your grandparents live?

Il nostro amico, Carlo, è appena tornato da Lisbona.

Our friend, Carlo, has just come back from Lisbon.

Il suo nuovo direttore è un uomo molto difficile.

His new manager is a very difficult man.

Dov'è il mio libro?

Where is my book?

Mi piace la vostra nuova casa.

I like your new house.

Conoscete i nostri amici?

Do you know our friends?

You will note that the *definite article* is used, as well as the possessive. The words used to express possession are adjectives and have to agree with the noun they qualify. The forms are:

my	il mio	la mia	i miei	le mie	(io)
your	il tuo	la tua	i tuoi	le tue	(tu)
his/her	il suo	la sua	i suoi	le sue	(lui/lei)
your (formal)	il Suo	la Sua	i Suoi	le Sue	(Lei)
our	il nostro	la nostra	i nostri	le nostre	(noi)
your	il vostro	la vostra	i vostri	le vostre	(voi)
their	il loro	la loro	i loro	le loro	(loro)

Notes

- (a) You cannot distinguish in Italian between 'his' and 'her'. **e' la sua macchina** means 'it's his/her car', according to the context.
- (b) **il tuo** etc. is used when talking to someone to whom you say **tu**, a friend, a relation, a colleague, a child: **Usi la tua macchina ogni giorno?**
il Suo etc. is for when you are talking to someone whom you address as **Lei**, i.e. someone with whom your relationship is formal: **Signor Martini, Lei usa la Sua macchina ogni giorno?**
il vostro etc. is used when talking to more than one person: **Voi usate la vostra macchina ogni giorno?**
- (c) **il loro** etc.: **loro** is invariable. Also, **il loro** is an exception to the rule about omitting the definite article when talking about a relative: **Il loro padre**.
- (d) When referring to their family, Italians often call them simply: **i miei**.
- (e) The possessives can also be used as *pronouns*:

Non trovo l'ombrello. I can't find my umbrella.

Non preoccuparti. Prendi il mio. Don't worry. Take mine.

A saying

Natale con i tuoi, Pasqua con chi vuoi.

Christmas with your family, Easter with whoever you like.

Exercise 5

Gianni is showing you some photos. Ask him if the people are members of his family and if the buildings etc. belong to him.

Example: E' la tua casa?

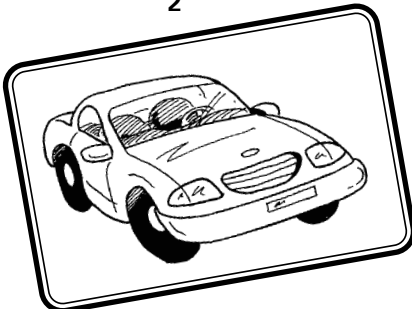
Now imagine that you had only recently met the person showing you the photos, perhaps in a hotel while on holiday. You would use **Lei**. How would you change your questions?



1



2



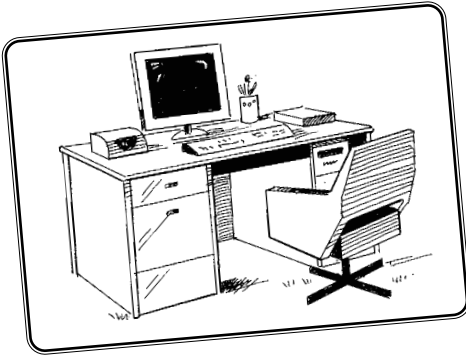
3



4



5



6



Saying how old someone is

Talking about his son, Aldo says: **Marco ha sedici anni.** To express age, you use **avere** + the number + years. In answer to the question **Quanti anni hai?** Marco might say:

Ho sedici anni. *or* **Ne ho sedici.**

ne means 'of them', here referring to years. You need either **anni** after the number or **ne** before the verb.

Exercise 6

Work out how you would say

- 1 your own age
- 2 that of your children if you have any
- 3 that of your brothers and sisters
- 4 and of your grandparents etc.

You will get sentences like:

Ho trentaquattro anni.

Mio figlio, Bill, ha tre anni e mia figlia, Clare, ne ha due.

Mia sorella ha quarant'anni e mio fratello ne ha trentotto.

Mio nonno ha novantadue anni.

Dialogue 2

Il tempo

Aldo is telephoning a business colleague who is in Venice. It's January and it is just before lunch.

1 Is Aldo's colleague having good weather in Venice?

2 Why are the ski buffs likely to be happier in the near future?

ALDO: Che tempo fa a Venezia?

COLLEGA: Oggi c'è un bel sole e ora, a mezzogiorno, fa quasi caldo. Ieri e lunedì però il tempo è stato brutto: nebbia umida, e che freddo! E da te?

ALDO: Qui fa bello. La notte però la temperatura scende sotto zero. In montagna non nevica e gli sciatori si lamentano perché non c'è neve. Ma secondo le previsioni, il tempo sta per cambiare.

Talking about the weather

The standard question about the weather is **Che tempo fa?** You can answer in the following ways:

Fa bel tempo	or	Il tempo è bello	The weather is fine
Fa brutto tempo		brutto	bad/nasty
		freddo	cold
		caldo	hot

or

Fa bello	It's fine/lovely
brutto	nasty/bad
freddo	cold
caldo	hot

In other words: either (1) start your sentence with **Fa** and add an adjective or the set phrases **bel tempo**, **brutto tempo**; or (2) start with **il tempo è** and add adjectives. Other possible answers are:

C'è il sole	It's sunny/the sun is shining		
la nebbia	foggy		
vento	windy		
Piove	It's raining	la pioggia	rain
Neve	It's snowing	la neve	snow

More weather vocabulary

le previsioni del tempo	the weather forecast or, often: il meteo
cielo sereno	clear sky
nuvoloso	cloudy
mare mosso	rough sea
calmo	calm
un temporale	a storm
il maltempo	bad weather
la grandine	hail (hailstones)

Every so often you will read the headline in the newspaper:

Mezza Italia in tilt per il maltempo

Half Italy in chaos because of the bad weather

and know that heavy snow or rain, high winds or thick fog has upset road, rail or air traffic.

Using stare + per 'about to'

Il tempo sta per cambiare

'The weather is about to change'

Use the present of **stare + per** + the infinitive to say 'to be about to, to be on the point of', e.g:

Stiamo per partire

We are about to leave/on the point of leaving

Il treno sta per arrivare

The train is about to arrive/on the point of arriving

The present tense of **stare** is:

sto	stiamo
stai	state
sta	stanno

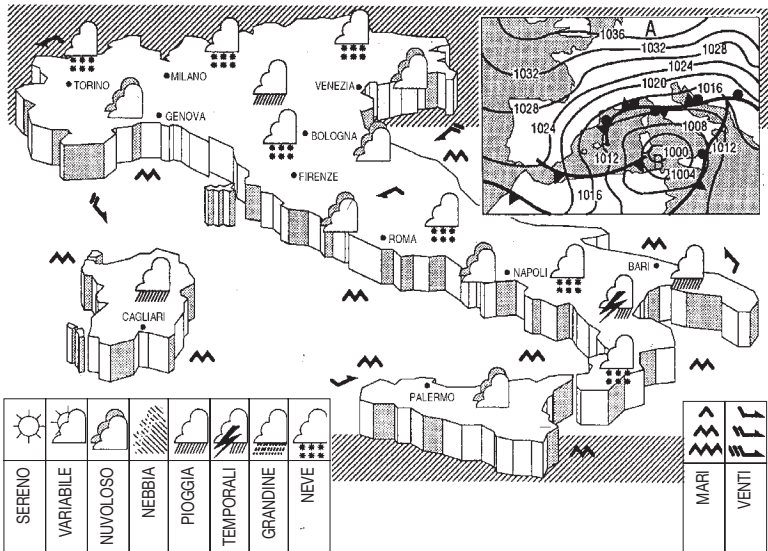
Exclamations

Che can be used with adjectives or nouns to make exclamations.

Che freddo!	What cold!
Che pioggia!	What rain!
Che scemo!	What a silly boy/man

Exercise 7

The language of weather forecasts tends to be technical but similar to English. There is usually, however, a drawing to help. We have reproduced one below which refers to the weather on Christmas Eve. Many people's image of Italy is of sunshine and warmth. Study the drawing and then answer the questions.



By courtesy of *La Stampa*.

- 1 What is the weather going to be like on the coast north of Rome?
- 2 What are the seas around all of the peninsula going to be like?
- 3 What is likely to fall on the Alps and the Apennines?
- 4 What is going to fall in Sardinia? It will also fall in the heel of Italy south of Bari and in the Po Plain.
- 5 In the instep of Italy (Basilicata) something particularly nasty seems to be in store. What is it?

Reading

Il clima italiano

- 1 **If you are flying to Milan in November, what might be a problem?**
- 2 **Why do those who can leave the northern cities in the summer head for the sea or the mountains?**
- 3 **In what way is the climate of the Adriatic Coast different from that of the Tyrrhenian coast?**
- 4 **If you like really hot weather, where in Italy should you choose for your holiday?**

Come per la cucina italiana, così anche per il clima non si può parlare di “clima italiano”. Varia da regione a regione. Le montagne del nord hanno un clima alpino: inverni freddi, estati calde di giorno ma con notti relativamente fresche. La pianura padana invece ha un clima continentale: inverni freddi, estati molto calde. Un grosso problema in questa zona è l’umidità: d’inverno c’è spesso nebbia e d’estate il tasso d’umidità è alto. In tutta l’Italia le zone costiere godono di un clima mite, grazie all’influenza del mare. Ma c’è una differenza tra la costa adriatica e quella tirrenica: infatti quest’ultima ha un clima generalmente più mite. D’inverno la costa adriatica è battuta qualche volta da venti freddi da nord-est, cioè dall’Europa centrale. Sull’Appennino influisce l’altitudine: d’inverno fa più freddo che sulla costa alla stessa latitudine. E poi, più si va verso sud, più il clima diventa caldo. Naturalmente, dappertutto ci sono momenti in cui il tempo è eccezionale, essendo particolarmente freddo o insolitamente caldo.

Vocabulary

godere di un clima mite	to enjoy a mild climate
quest'ultima	the latter
battuto	hit by, beaten by
alla stessa latitudine	at the same latitude

11 Che cosa ha visto?

What did you see?

In this unit you will learn about:

- **Polizia e carabinieri** – the Italian police
- Saying what you did/have done
- Saying **niente, nulla** 'nothing'; and **qualcosa** 'something'
- The gerund, **essendo, vendendo**
- Saying how long something has been going on for:
da + present tense
- Diminutives (**casetta** 'little house') and other suffixes
- Letters and emails to friends

Dialogue 1

Un giallo

The apartment next door to Mrs Mancini's has been burgled. She is being interviewed by the carabinieri.

- 1 **Who left home first, Mrs Mancini or her family?**
- 2 **Where did she go the first time she went out?**
- 3 **Why did she come back again before going to work?**
- 4 **What did she notice as she left the house the second time?**
- 5 **What did not seem strange to her at the time but does now?**
- 6 **Why did she find it strange that her neighbours' door was open?**

CARABINIERE: Signora, ci racconti che cosa ha fatto questa mattina.

SIG.RA M: Ecco. Mi sono alzata verso le sei e mezzo, come al solito. Ho preparato la colazione per mio marito

- e i miei figli. Loro sono usciti verso le sette e mezzo e io poco dopo.
- CARABINIERE Non ha notato niente di strano in quel momento?
- SIG.RA M: No, niente.
- CARABINIERE: E poi?
- SIG.RA M: E poi sono andata al mercato. Ho fatto la spesa. Siccome ho comprato carne, frutta e verdura, ho portato tutto a casa e ho messo la carne e la verdura nel frigo. E poi sono andata al lavoro verso le nove meno un quarto.
- CARABINIERE: E tutto Le è sembrato normale?
- SIG.RA M: Sì. Ma adesso mi ricordo che ho notato una grande macchina bianca, una Volvo, parcheggiata davanti a casa nostra. Dentro ho visto due uomini.
- CARABINIERE: Mi può descrivere questi uomini?
- SIG.RA M: Ma questo è il fatto strano: quando sono uscita di casa hanno girato la testa dall'altra parte. Così non ho visto la loro faccia. Sul momento non l'ho trovato strano, ma ora . . .
- CARABINIERE: E poi?
- SIG.RA M: E poi sono andata a lavorare e quando sono tornata a casa all'una ho trovato aperta la porta dell'appartamento dei miei vicini. Sono in vacanza all'estero, così ho subito pensato a un furto e ho chiamato i carabinieri.
- CARABINIERE: Ha fatto molto bene, signora. Allora, torniamo a quella macchina bianca . . .

Vocabulary

ci racconti	tell us
non ha notato niente di strano?	you didn't notice anything strange?
siccome	since (in the sense of 'because')
frigo (short for frigorifero)	fridge
mi ricordo	I remember
hanno girato la testa	they turned their heads
dall'altra parte	the other way
i miei vicini	my neighbours



A carabinieri examining works of art which have been recovered by the force. Courtesy Comando Generale dell'Arma dei Carabinieri.

Cultural point

The **Arma dei Carabinieri** is a military corps, under the Ministry of Defence. It originated as the Royal Guard of the Kingdom of Piedmont and Sardinia in the days before Italy was unified. Italy also has a police force: **la Polizia di Stato**, set up after the Unification of Italy, under the Ministry of the Interior. Their websites give an idea of the two: www.carabinieri.it and www.poliziadistato.it. There are also other corps such as the **Guardia di Finanza**, under the Ministry of Finance, who deal with tax evasion and smuggling. Each **comune** also has **vigili urbani**.

Language points

More about the *passato prossimo*, **saying what you did**

The **passato prossimo** of most verbs is formed with the present tense of **avere** + the past participle:

- **Che cosa ha fatto questa mattina?**
- **Ho preparato la colazione . . .**

Make a list of other examples of the **passato prossimo** in the Dialogue above. You should have found:

<i>avere</i>	<i>essere</i>
<i>ha notato</i>	<i>mi sono alzata</i>
<i>ho fatto la spesa</i>	<i>loro sono usciti</i>
<i>ho comprato</i>	<i>sono andata al mercato</i>
<i>ho portato</i>	<i>sono andata al lavoro</i>
<i>ho messo</i>	tutto Le è sembrato normale?
<i>ho notato</i>	<i>sono uscita</i>
<i>ho visto</i>	<i>sono andata a lavorare</i>
<i>hanno girato</i>	<i>sono tornata</i>
non ho visto	
non l'ho trovato strano	
<i>ho trovato</i>	
<i>ho subito pensato</i>	
<i>ho chiamato</i>	
ha fatto bene	

You will perhaps have noticed:

- 1 that when the **passato prossimo** is formed with **avere** the past participle does *not* agree with the subject;
- 2 **messo** is a new past participle to you; it comes from **mettere** ‘to put’.

The passato prossimo of reflexive verbs

The second verb in the conversation, **mi sono alzata**, is not one of the verbs of movement or state which you learned were conjugated with **essere**. It is a reflexive or pronominal verb (see Unit 6). Reflexive verbs also form their **passato prossimo** with **essere**.

The passato prossimo of impersonal verbs

Verbs used impersonally also usually make their **passato prossimo** with **essere**: **Tutto Le è sembrato normale?** ‘Did everything seem normal to you?’ (**sembra** means ‘it seems’).

Mi è piaciuto molto il film.

I liked the film a lot.

Che cosa è successo?

What’s happened?/What happened?

(**succedere** means ‘to happen’; **succede** means ‘it happens, it is happening’.)

With verbs relating to weather phenomena such as **nevicare**, **piovere**, both **avere** and **essere** are used. **essere** is considered the better usage.

E’ nevicato in montagna ieri. Qui è piovuto.

Ha nevicato in montagna ieri. Qui ha piovuto.

It snowed in the mountains yesterday. Here it rained.

Exercise 1

You and your husband/wife/friend(s) had a busy weekend. Tell someone about it. Here is what you did:

Sabato

mattina

fare la spesa

comprare un vestito nuovo per me

pomeriggio

andare a una mostra interessante

sera

essere a cena da vecchi amici

Domenica

fare una gita con amici che hanno una barca a vela

andare in mare con questi amici

pranzare sulla barca

fare il bagno

prendere il sole

cenare in un ristorante sul porto

Exercise 2

You are an Italian private detective (**investigatore privato**) and you have been asked to follow a certain lady. Report on what she did yesterday. We give you the verbs in the infinitive.

- 1 uscire di casa alle nove e mezzo
- 2 salire su un taxi
- 3 andare alla Banca Nazionale del Lavoro in Piazza Garibaldi
- 4 uscire dalla banca dopo un quarto d'ora
- 5 andare a piedi al bar Roma
- 6 sedersi all'interno del bar
- 7 ordinare un cappuccino
- 8 essere raggiunta da un uomo alto, bello, elegante
- 9 uscire dal bar con quest'uomo
- 10 salire su una Mercedes con lui
- 11 andare in un ristorante sul lago
- 12 verso le tre lasciare il ristorante, sempre in compagnia dell'uomo

YOUR CLIENT: E poi?

YOU: E poi, niente. Li ho perduti. Ho avuto un incidente con la mia macchina.

YOUR CLIENT: Pazienza. In ogni modo, quell'uomo alto e elegante, che guida una Mercedes, è probabilmente suo fratello.

Using niente/nulla and qualcosa

niente means 'nothing/not . . . anything'. The **carabiniere** asks Mrs Mancini:

Non ha notato niente di strano?

You didn't notice anything strange?

To use **niente** with a verb, you must have **non** before the verb:

Non ho visto niente.

I saw nothing/I didn't see anything.

Non capisco niente.

I understand nothing/I don't understand anything.

nulla also means ‘nothing’ and is used in the same way as **niente**:

Non abbiamo visto nulla.

We didn’t see anything/we saw nothing.

Note: ‘Something’ is normally **qualcosa**, or the longer form **qualche cosa**:

E’ successo qualcosa.

Something has happened.

Hai visto qualcosa?

Did you see something/anything?

‘Something’/‘nothing’ + adjective is **qualcosa/niente/nulla di ...**:

E’ successo qualcosa di strano.

Something strange has happened.

Qualcosa di bello.

Something lovely.

Non ha detto nulla di interessante.

He didn’t say anything interesting.

Non so nulla di buono di lui.

I don’t know anything good about him.

‘Something’/‘nothing’ + verb is **qualcosa da/niente da/nulla da ...**:

Vuoi qualcosa da mangiare?

Do you want something/anything to eat?

Ho qualcosa da fare.

I have something to do.

Non ha niente da fare.

He/she has nothing to do. He/she hasn’t anything to do.

Non c’è nulla da mangiare.

There’s nothing to eat.

(See also p. 134 for a similar use of **da**.)

Exercise 3

Things went badly today. Your husband wants to know about a number of things you intended to do but you had no success, so answers to these questions are negative. Use **non ... niente**.

1 Hai comprato la camicetta che volevi?

2 Hai letto l’articolo di Sergio Romano sul giornale di ieri?

- 3 Hai finito di scrivere la lettera alla nonna?
- 4 Hai almeno mangiato bene a mezzogiorno? C'era quel buon prosciutto da finire.
- 5 Ma insomma, che cosa hai fatto oggi?
Sono stata poco bene e così _____ .

Reading

La lettera di un'amica

When you write letters to your friends you will often want to talk about what you have been doing. Here is a letter from a friend.

- 1 Marina says a lot has happened since she last wrote. What three events does she write about?**
- 2 Why was 23 May a special day for Marina?**
- 3 What keeps Marina busy in spite of the fact that she has retired?**
- 4 What did Marina and her husband find difficult when she retired? What has helped them resolve the problem?**

Cara Sara,

Ti ringrazio per la tua lettera. Mi scuso per questo lungo silenzio. Sappi almeno che sei spesso stata presente nei miei pensieri.

Nel frattempo sono successe molte cose. Piero, essendo ormai ben inserito nel suo lavoro di avvocato, si è sposato con la sua ragazza. Si conoscono da quasi dieci anni. Hanno una casa piccola ma fra un mese traslocheranno nella casa che abbiamo comprato vendendo la nostra casetta di Desenzano.

La seconda grande notizia è stata la nascita di Andrea, figlio di Paola. E' nato il giorno del mio compleanno, il 23 maggio. E' un bambino simpaticissimo con occhi grigio-blu e un carattere allegro. Ora ha nove mesi e tutti gli vogliamo molto bene.

Terzo avvenimento: sono andata in pensione il primo di settembre. Ma ho molto da fare e non mi annoio. Lavoro sempre come consulente e scrittrice. Poi mi occupo spesso di Andrea mentre Paola lavora. Infine i miei genitori che sono vecchi e deboli hanno bisogno di aiuto. Così sono sempre occupata.

Anche mio marito è in pensione: all'inizio è stato difficile ma ormai ci siamo abituati. La nostra casa è grande e ognuno ha il suo studio, il proprio spazio.

Non mi resta che scusarmi ancora per il ritardo nello scrivere. Con molto affetto, buon lavoro e fatti sentire,

Un abbraccio,

Marina

Vocabulary

ti ringrazio	I thank you
mi scuso	I apologize (I excuse myself)
sappi	I want you to know that (the tu imperative/command form from sapere ; the formal form (Lei) is sappia)
nei miei pensieri	in my thoughts
nel frattempo	in the meanwhile
ben inserito nel suo lavoro	nicely settled in his work
traslocheranno	they will move
tutti gli vogliamo molto bene	we all love him very much
sono andata in pensione	I retired
non mi annoio	I'm not bored (annoiarsi 'to be bored')
mi occupo di Andrea	I take care of Andrea
ci siamo abituati	we have got used to it, we are used to it
fatti sentire	keep in touch/write soon (lit. 'make yourself heard')

Language points

The gerund, essendo, vendendo

Marina writes:

Piero, essendo ormai ben inserito nel suo lavoro di avvocato, si è sposato.

Piero, now being well settled (since he is now settled) in his work as a lawyer, got married.

La casa che abbiamo comprato vendendo la nostra casetta di Desenzano

The house we bought by selling our little house in Desenzano

This form is called the *gerund*. In all cases, take the infinitive as the base and remove the ending: for **-are** verbs then add **-ando** and for all the others **-endo**.

<i>-are</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>-ire</i>		
parlare	decidere	capire	essere	avere
parlando	decidendo	capendo	essendo	avendo

The only verbs that are irregular are **dire, fare, bere** and a few others (**produrre** and similar verbs with infinitives ending in **-rre**). All have infinitives that have become shortened (from **dicere, facere, bere, produrre**). The gerund is based on the old infinitive:

dicendo facendo bevendo producendo

Knowing about this older form of the infinitive also helps explain other forms of these verbs. **dare** and **stare** behave regularly: **dando, stando**.

The gerund is used:

- 1 to explain *how* or *why*, as in the examples in the letter:

Facendo il lavoro così, lo rendi più difficile.

(By) doing the work this way, you make it more difficult.

- 2 to convey one action happening at the same time as another ('while, on, as'):

Andando a Roma, mi sono fermato una notte a Firenze.

(While) going to Rome, I stopped for a night in Florence.

Uscendo di casa, Giorgio ha visto l'amico Aldo.

As he left (on leaving) home, Giorgio saw his friend Aldo.

Do not assume the gerund will always translate the English form ending in '-ing'. The gerund is a verbal form. When the form ending in '-ing' is a noun, in Italian it is more likely to be expressed by an infinitive. For instance, Marina says:

... il ritardo nello scrivere

... the delay in writing

Compare:

Mi piace leggere.

I like reading.

This is a difficult point. As always, try to imitate what you hear and read. And don't worry too much about mistakes.

Sbagliando si impara.

One learns by making mistakes.

Exercise 4

Below are some pairs of sentences. Combine them using the gerund. This will make the style more interesting.

Example: **Faccio passeggiate in campagna. Mi piace guardare i fiori e gli alberi.**

Facendo passeggiate in campagna, mi piace guardare i fiori e gli alberi.

(a) These sentences are about Sergio's morning routine.

- 1 Sergio va al lavoro ogni mattina. Compra il giornale.
- 2 E' di Firenze. Compra *la Nazione**.
- 3 Prende un espresso al bar. Legge il giornale.

* *La Nazione* is the Florentine daily newspaper.

(b) These sentences are about your friends.

- 1 I miei amici hanno una casa in campagna. Passano spesso il fine settimana lì.
- 2 Il loro giardino è grande. Hanno sempre del lavoro da fare.
- 3 Hanno un orto (vegetable garden, kitchen garden). Hanno sempre frutta e verdura fresca a tavola.

Another use of da, saying how long something has been going on for

Si conoscono da dieci anni

When you talk about what you have been doing you use the **passato prossimo**. An exception to this is when you want to convey the idea that something has been happening *for* a certain amount of time and is still happening. Marina said Piero and his girlfriend 'have known each other *for* ten years'. Here are some more examples:

Studio l'italiano da due mesi.

I have been studying Italian for two months.

Gianni lavora da due anni in quella ditta.

Gianni has been working for that firm for two years.

Non lo vedo da tre anni.

I haven't seen him for three years.

You say what is going on, using the present tense, and then use **da** plus the amount of time. This is another use of the preposition **da**. You can also use **da** followed by a point in time, meaning 'since' in English:

E' qui da venerdì.

He's been here since Friday.

Abitiamo a Roma da giugno dell'anno scorso.

We have been living in Rome since June last year.

Exercise 5

Here are some things Pietro does and the date when he started doing them. Imagine it is now December 2006. Write down how long he has been doing these things. Then also write down how you would say this in English.

Example: **Fuma la pipa. 2000**
Pietro fuma la pipa da sei anni.

- | | | |
|---|------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 | Suona il pianoforte. | 1982 |
| 2 | Lavora come ingegnere. | 2002 |
| 3 | Conosce Antonio. | 1992 |
| 4 | Studia il francese. | 2005, settembre |
| 5 | Esce con Alessia. | 2003 |
| 6 | Abita a Milano. | 1995 |

You could also have said: **Pietro fuma la pipa dal 2000** etc.

Diminutives and other suffixes

Marina talks about a little house (**una casetta**) in Desenzano (on Lake Garda) which they have sold to help Piero buy a house. Rather than saying **una piccola casa** she alters the word **casa** by adding a suffix (an extra syllable at the end of a word), **-etta**. You will remember how this device is used with adjectives to convey the idea 'very': **bello, bellissimo**. There are a number of such suffixes.

Warning: it takes time for the non-native speaker to get them right. However, it is useful to be able to recognize them. Here are some common ones.

- **-etto, -ino** can be added to nouns and adjectives to convey an idea of smallness:

fratellino	little brother
orchestrina	small orchestra (such as plays for a bar in Piazza San Marco in Venice – see Unit 1)
piazzetta	little square (indeed the square which lies at right angles to Piazza San Marco and which leads to the waterfront is called la Piazzetta)

- **-ino** is also commonly added to certain adjectives and adverbs, modifying their meaning:

caro	dear	piano	softly, slowly
carino	pretty, cute, sweet	pianino	very softly, slowly

- **-one** indicates bigness; it can be added to nouns, adjectives and the adverb **bene**. When it is added to feminine words they change gender and become masculine:

una donna	woman	un libro	a book
un donnone	a big woman	un librone	a big book

– **Come sta?** – **Benone.**
 – How are you? – Fine.

- **-accio** indicates the speaker considers the person or object nasty or worthless:

parola	word	tempo	weather
parolaccia	swear word	tempaccio	dreadful weather
parolacce (pl.)	bad language		

- **-astro** added to words for colour is equivalent to the English ‘-ish’:

bianco white
biancastro whitish

Note: **fratellastro, sorellastra, figliastro/a** are used to mean ‘step-brother, stepsister, stepson, stepdaughter’ respectively.

Listen for these suffixes. There are others, but it is best to use only those you have heard. Sometimes the words formed come to stand

in their own right, for example **telefonino** is the usual everyday word for a ‘cellular telephone’, **spago** is ‘string’, **spaghetti** are long pieces of pasta in the shape of strings.

Letters and emails

Letter-writing is being eclipsed by emails and telephone calls. However, much of what follows applies equally to emails and to letters. When writing to a friend, use **caro, cara** and the friend’s name. If you start your emails ‘Hi, Guido!’ you will probably use **Ciao, Guido!** in Italian. The salutation at the end depends on the intimacy of the relationship. Possible endings are:

affettuosamente	yours affectionately
saluti affettuosi	affectionate greetings
cari saluti	warm (lit. ‘dear’) greetings
un abbraccio	much love (lit. ‘a hug, an embrace’)

When writing to someone you know fairly well but with whom you have a fairly formal relationship, using **Lei**, you may start **Caro signor Rossi**, and end **Cordialmente** or **Cordiali saluti**. It is considered a courtesy to use a capital letter for **Lei** and related words, e.g:

La ringrazio della Sua gentile ospitalità.

When writing to someone you do not know or with whom your relationship is very formal, you write:

Egregio Signore (to a man) **Gentile Signora** (to a woman)

When the surname is not used, a capital letter for the title is customary. You can still end with **cordiali saluti**, or use **distinti saluti** which is more formal.

Emails tend to be less formal but that will depend on the circumstances. The word for email is **una email** or, more commonly, **una mail**. The Italian name for the system is **posta elettronica**.

Exercise 6

Write a letter or an email to an imaginary Italian friend telling him/her what you did last weekend. You should try to use some of the expressions in this unit but of course you are free to try to say whatever you like.

12 Ecco la mia casa

This is my home

In this unit you will learn about:

- How to talk about houses and flats
- **maggiore, minore** 'elder, younger'; **morire, nascere** 'to die, to be born'; **nel** 'in'
- Ways of giving reasons: **perché, a causa di, grazie a**
- The various uses of **ci**
- The pronoun **ne** 'of it, of them, some'
- Trends in housing in Italy

Reading 1

La cugina italiana

- 1 Who is Gabriella?
- 2 Why does Angela go to see her?
- 3 Does Angela visit Gabriella often?
- 4 What sort of district is the one Gabriella lives in?

La sorella maggiore della mamma di Angela Smith ha sposato un italiano. Questa sorella è morta qualche anno fa, ma la mamma di Angela ha mantenuto i contatti con i suoi figli, i cugini di Angela. Una in particolare scrive regolarmente. Si chiama Gabriella. La mamma di Angela le ha chiesto di andare a trovare questa cugina. E' la prima volta che Angela va da Gabriella. Gabriella le fa vedere la sua casa, che si trova al quarto piano di un palazzo costruito nel 1967. E' in una zona residenziale nella periferia di Torino, nata negli anni del boom, del 'miracolo italiano', per gente che veniva a lavorare nella grande industria automobilistica. Oggi nella zona

ci sono molti palazzi simili ma le strade sono larghe, ci sono alberi e spazio. E' un quartiere tranquillo.



Gabriella

Vocabulary

sorella maggiore	elder sister
qualche anno fa	some years ago
questa sorella è morta	this sister died
le fa vedere	shows her

Language points

maggiore, minore

As well as meaning 'bigger', **maggiore** is also used to mean 'elder', referring to brothers and sisters. **minore** means 'younger'.

Using morire, nascere

morire (past participle: **morto**) 'to die' is irregular, as is **nascere** (past participle **nato**) 'to be born'. Both verbs form the **passato prossimo** with **essere**:

E' morto il presidente.
The president has died.

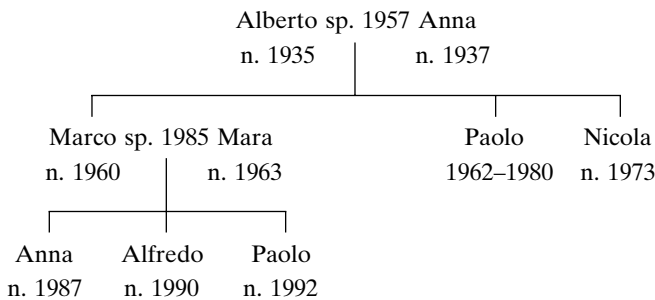
Anna è nata nel 1954.
Anna was born in 1954.

nel 'in'

Notice you say **nel 1967** 'in 1967', as in the example above, **nel 1954**. You always do this for 'in' with a year.

Exercise 1

Use the information in this family tree to complete the paragraph below.



Alberto ha (1) _____ Anna a Napoli (2) _____ 1957. Poco dopo sono emigrati negli Stati Uniti. Hanno avuto tre figli. Il (3) _____, Marco, (4) _____ nel 1960. Da studente è tornato in Italia a trovare i cugini italiani e così ha conosciuto Mara. Si sono sposati nel (5) _____. Vivono a Chicago e ormai hanno anche loro tre (6) _____, Anna, (7) _____ nel 1987, Alfredo, nel 1990, e Paolo, nel 1992. Paolo, il secondo figlio di Alberto e di Anna (8) _____ in un incidente stradale nel 1980. Nicola, il figlio (9) _____ di Alberto e di Anna, è medico. Per il momento non è (10) _____ e così non ha figli.

Vocabulary

La casa

appartamento	flat, apartment	palazzo	apartment building, block of flats,
il pian terreno	the ground floor		palace
al pian terreno	on the ground floor	il primo piano	the first floor
il secondo piano	the second floor	ascensore	lift

il seminterrato	basement, semi-basement (partly below ground)	scala	staircase
		entrata	entrance hall
		stanza	room
soggiorno	living room, sitting room	sala da pranzo	dining room
		cucina	kitchen
bagno	bathroom	camera	bedroom
ripostiglio	boxroom, store	(da letto)	
cantina	cellar	balcone	balcony
terrazza/o*	terrace		

* Often used of a large balcony. Both masculine and feminine forms exist.

Cultural point

Stanza is a general word for ‘room’, particularly in a house.

Quante stanze ci sono nella casa?

How many rooms are there in the house?

sala also means ‘room’ but in a home its use is limited to **sala da pranzo**: **sala** is used for spacious rooms in public buildings, e.g. **sala d’attesa** ‘waiting room’, **sala da ballo** ‘dance hall’, **sala operatoria** ‘operating theatre’. (*Note also: saletta* ‘little room’, *salone* ‘large, spacious room’.) **camera** also means ‘room’, but its use is usually limited, in the context of a home or a hotel, to ‘bedroom’, sometimes given the longer name of **camera da letto**. **stanza** is used in **stanza da bagno**, although often the bathroom is just **il bagno**.

Floors are counted European-style. **il pian terreno** is the ground floor at ground level. **il primo piano** is one floor up from ground level. ‘On’ a particular floor is **al**:

al terzo piano

on the third floor (fourth floor American-style counting)

Dialogue 1

Ecco il mio appartamento

Gabriella shows Angela her apartment.

- 1 What does Gabriella particularly like about her living room?
- 2 What does Angela approve of about the kitchen?
- 3 Would Gabriella like a second bathroom?

4 Where is the garage?**5 What does Gabriella have in the basement?**

GABRIELLA: Questo è il soggiorno. Mi piace perché dà verso ovest e riceve il sole al tramonto.

ANGELA: E' spazioso e anche molto luminoso.

GABRIELLA: Sì, a causa delle porte-finestre che danno sul balcone. Ed ecco la cucina.

ANGELA: E' bella e grande. Ci si può mangiare senza difficoltà.

GABRIELLA: Sì, serve anche da sala da pranzo. Poi c'è il bagno. E in fondo al corridoio ci sono le camere.

ANGELA: E quella porta lì è un altro bagno?

GABRIELLA: Purtroppo no. Ne abbiamo uno solo. E' un ripostiglio. E' molto utile.

ANGELA: Immagino. Avete anche il garage?

GABRIELLA: Sì. Ma è dietro il palazzo, nel cortile. Abbiamo anche la cantina nel seminterrato.

ANGELA: Hai detto che avete un balcone?

GABRIELLA: Ne abbiamo due, uno davanti e uno più piccolo dietro. Vieni a vedere.

Vocabulary

dà verso ovest it looks west

serve anche da sala da pranzo it also acts/serves as a dining room

Language points***Ways of giving reasons***

perché is used followed by a verb; **a causa di** by a noun:

Mangio perché ho fame.

I'm eating because I'm hungry.

Mangio a causa della fame.

I'm eating because of hunger.

On the other hand if the reason is positive, you can say **grazie a**:

Grazie al bel tempo, mangiamo fuori.

Thanks to the good weather, we are eating outside.

Various uses of ci

ci si può mangiare one can eat in it/there

ci here replaces **nella cucina**. In the letter in the previous unit, Marina wrote:

ci siamo abituati we are used to it

ci has a number of functions:

- 1 As a *pronoun* replacing **in** or **a** + noun (in English ‘in it, to it, at it, in them, to them, at them, there’). Used in this way, **ci** may be replaced by **vi** but **vi** is not common in everyday speech. Notice that **ci** (or **vi**) goes in front of the verb:

- **Vai spesso a Roma?**
- **Ci vado una volta al mese.**
- Do you go to Rome often?
- I go there once a month.

Mi piace molto la campagna. Ci sto volentieri.
I like the country. I like being there
(lit. ‘I stay in it willingly’).

- 2 *With verbs* which need an **a** before the object, such as **credere** ‘to believe’, **riuscire** ‘to succeed, to manage’, **ci** is used as follows:

Tu credi a quello che dice? Io non ci credo.
Do you believe what he says? I don’t believe it.

Riesci ad aprire questa bottiglia? Io non ci riesco.
Can you open this bottle? I can’t manage it.

- 3 As a *subject* (‘there’) + **essere**:

C’è un libro sul tavolo.
There’s a book on the table.

Ci sono due macchine davanti alla porta.
There are two cars outside the door.

Again, **vi** can replace **ci** but again it is not common in spoken Italian.

- 4 As a *personal pronoun*, direct and indirect object (‘us, to us’):

Anna ci ha visti al ristorante.
Anna saw us in the restaurant.

Maurizio ci telefona spesso. (telefonare a qualcuno)

Maurizio telephones us often.

Note: The past participle agrees with a direct object pronoun (as in **ci ha visti**).

5 As a reflexive and reciprocal pronoun:

Ci divertiamo molto.

We are enjoying ourselves/enjoy ourselves a lot.

Ci scriviamo una volta alla settimana.

We write to each other once a week.

Exercise 2

Answer these questions using **ci** instead of repeating the place.

Example: **Paolo va a Roma sabato? (domenica)**

No, ci va domenica.

- 1 Anna, da quanto tempo abita a Genova? (due anni)
- 2 Vai da Giorgio domani? (se ho tempo)
- 3 Sei stato a New York quest'anno? (due anni fa)
- 4 I tuoi genitori, quando traslocano nella loro nuova casa?
(a maggio)

Using ne

Ne abbiamo uno solo (lit. 'We have only one of them')

ne means, according to the context, 'of it, of them, some'. It is used in sentences where the speaker is saying how many or how much of something is being referred to. In English the 'of it, of them' would normally not be necessary:

– **Quante macchine hai?**

– How many cars do you have?

– **Ne ho una sola.**

– I only have one.

– **Hai dei francobolli?**

– Have you any stamps?

– **Sì, ne ho due o tre.**

– Yes, I have two or three (of them).

– **E' buono il gelato?**

– Is the ice cream good?

– **Sì, ne vuoi un po'?**

– Yes, do you want a little (of it)?

Sono belle le mele, ne prendo un chilo.

The apples are lovely, I'll have a kilo (of them).

- **Ti piacciono gli spinaci?** – **Sì, ne mangio spesso.**
 – Do you like spinach? – Yes, I eat it often.

Exercise 3

Answer 'yes' to the following questions about your family home (imaginary) using the information given.

Example: **Avete un bagno? (2)**
Ne abbiamo due.

- | | | |
|---|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 | Quante camere avete? | (4) |
| 2 | Quanti piani avete? | (3) |
| 3 | Quante stanze avete? | (7 in tutto) |
| 4 | Avete anche un garage? | (1 solo) |
| 5 | Avete un giardino? | (2 – uno davanti e uno dietro) |

Now give the real answers referring to the house where you actually live.

Using *ci* and *ne* together

Ce n'è per tutti

Sometimes when you are asked whether there is something, you need to use both **ci** and **ne**:

– **Mamma, sono qui con i miei amici. C'è qualcosa da mangiare?**

– **Sì, c'è una torta.**

– **E' grande? Siamo in sette.**

– **Non preoccuparti. Ce n'è per tutti.**

– Mum, I've got my friends with me. Is there anything to eat?

– Yes, there's a cake.

– Is it big? There are seven of us.

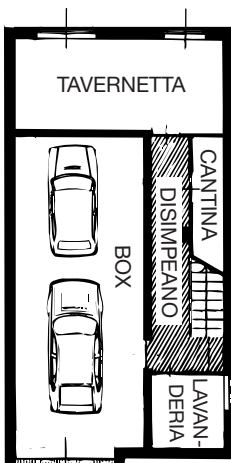
– Don't worry. There is some/enough (of it) for everybody.

When you have **ci** followed by **ne**, **ci** changes and rhymes with **ne**. In the example, of course, the **ne** was followed by **è** and so shortened.

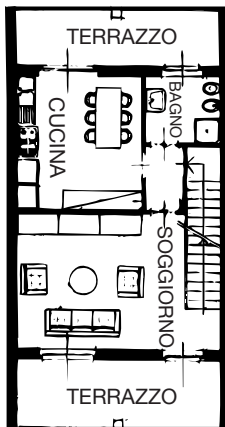
- **Ci sono delle macchine davanti alla casa?**
- **Si, ce ne sono tre.**
- Are there any cars outside the house?
- Yes, there are three (of them).

Exercise 4

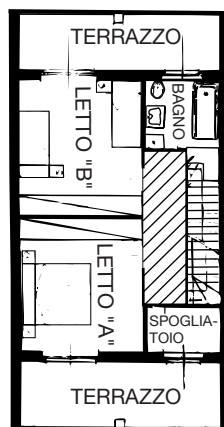
Below is the plan of some houses being built on the edge of a small town. Land is relatively cheap and the builder is offering small houses built on three floors rather than flats. Study the plans and answer the questions.



Piano seminterrato



Piano rialzato

1° Piano
Planimetrie indicative

Note: **box** is another word for **garage**. **una tavernetta** is usually furnished simply and used for parties. To have one seems to be something of a status symbol. **una lavanderia** is a place for doing the washing. **uno spogliatoio** is a place where you can take off and leave your clothes, for instance at a gymnasium or a swimming pool. **piano rialzato** is a floor a little above ground level.

- Example:* - **Quanti bagni ci sono?**
- **Ce ne sono due.**

- 1 Quanti piani ci sono in questa casa?
- 2 Nel box quante macchine ci sono?

- 3 Quanti terrazzi ci sono?
- 4 Quante camere ci sono?
- 5 C'è una cantina?

Exercise 5

You have enjoyed a holiday in Tuscany. The agent is checking you out of the house as you leave. You ask about a different villa for your stay next year. Explain the following points to him. Keep it simple. You can use: **abbiamo bisogno di** 'we need', **vorremmo** 'we should like', or, more firmly, **vogliamo** 'we want'.

- 1 You want to come back next year but not to the same villa.
- 2 Next year you want a view over the valley.
- 3 Next year your friends, the Simpsons, are going to come with you, so you need four bedrooms.
- 4 You prefer to have two rooms downstairs (i.e. not just one big room, so use **stanza**).
- 5 You also want two or more bathrooms next year.
- 6 And, above all, you want a quiet house, away from the road. This year's house has been noisy (**rumoroso**).

Exercise 6

Write a simple description of your own house and draw a floor plan, labelling the rooms.

Reading 2

Dove vivono gli Italiani

- 1 What is the new trend as far as bathrooms go?
- 2 Which room is sometimes missing?
- 3 What is the latest trend as far as a place to live is concerned?
- 4 How did some families acquire their house in the country?
- 5 What did the many Italians who left the land and moved into the cities in the 1950s and 1960s do there?
- 6 What change in lifestyle is making it possible to reverse this trend nowadays?

Oggi la maggior parte degli Italiani vive in città e così l'alloggio è un appartamento. In genere gli appartamenti hanno stanze

spaziose. Un appartamento tipico comprende un'entrata, un soggiorno, una, due o tre camere, un bagno e una cucina. Sempre di più i costruttori forniscono "doppi servizi", cioè due bagni. Il secondo bagno di solito non ha la vasca ma solo la doccia. Con una famiglia di due o tre persone è molto pratico. Non c'è sempre la sala da pranzo; piuttosto c'è il tinello, cioè una sala piccola dove si può mangiare ma con un angolo cucina. Generalmente l'appartamento ha un balcone.

Sempre di più però gli Italiani vogliono fuggire dalla grande città per vivere in periferia, in città più piccole o addirittura in campagna. Parecchie famiglie inoltre, pur vivendo in città, possiedono una casa in campagna. Spesso è la casa dei nonni, abbandonata negli anni '50, '60, periodo in cui moltissimi Italiani andavano a lavorare nelle fabbriche in città. Ora, poiché quasi ogni famiglia dispone di una macchina, è possibile tornare a vivere in campagna, o almeno andare in campagna ogni fine settimana e trovare pace e aria pulita.

Vocabulary

la maggior parte	the majority
addirittura	even
parecchie famiglie	several families
inoltre	furthermore, besides
pur vivendo	even though they live
poiché	since, as

13 La vita è cambiata

Life has changed

In this unit you will learn about:

- Saying what things were like
- Saying what you used to do
- Saying what was happening at the time of a particular event
- Saying something is going on at this very moment (**stare** + gerund): the present continuous
- How to say 'no' firmly; more negatives
- **passato remoto**: past events that no longer matter
- **neppure** 'not even, neither'
- Word power: ways of guessing meanings

Dialogue 1

Nel 1967

Having shown Angela her flat, Gabriella offers her a cup of tea. Thanks to her English mother, she knows how to make a good one. They are sitting on the balcony.

- 1 From Gabriella's balcony what can be seen all around?
- 2 When she first came to live there what did she look out over?
- 3 What was there opposite the building?
- 4 What was the road like?
- 5 There was a factory there, surrounded by fields. How did the workers get to work?
- 6 Why are there fewer workers at the factory these days?

GABRIELLA: Ecco il tè.

ANGELA: Si sta bene qui. C'è anche posto per mangiare fuori.

- GABRIELLA: Sì. Anche se ci sono palazzi tutto intorno, è tranquillo. Ma sai, quando siamo venuti a vivere qui c'era tutta campagna in questa zona, tutti prati.
- ANGELA: Davvero?
- GABRIELLA: Proprio di fronte, c'era una cascina, con animali, mucche, pecore. La strada non era ancora asfaltata. Io, quando andavo a fare la spesa, mettevo un paio di scarpe vecchie, perché camminavo sulla terra, sul fango. Poi quando arrivavo sulla strada buona, cambiavo scarpe. Non potevo mica andare in giro con le scarpe coperte di fango. Ma non volevo mettere scarpe belle per camminare su questa strada!
- ANGELA: La zona è molto cambiata, allora.
- GABRIELLA: Sì, molto. A quell'epoca, la fabbrica era già qui ma era isolata in mezzo ai campi. Gli operai arrivavano con il tram o con pullman privati.
- ANGELA: E oggi?
- GABRIELLA: Oggi la zona sta cambiando di nuovo. Ora ci sono meno operai alla fabbrica. Usano invece robot. E la gente preferisce vivere fuori, in centri piccoli piuttosto che nella grande città. Ci sono molti appartamenti vuoti nella zona.



Vocabulary

prati	meadows
camminavo sulla terra, sul fango	I used to walk on earth, on mud
non potevo mica	I really couldn't (see below)
andare in giro	go around
la fabbrica era già qui	the factory was already here
gli operai	the workers (industrial workers)
piuttosto che	rather than

Language points

The imperfect: saying what things were like

To talk about completed actions in the past you use the **passato prossimo**. But sometimes you want to look at the past in another way. To describe the way things were in the past you use the *imperfect* tense, **l'imperfetto**. The name does not mean there is something wrong with it; it comes from Latin and means 'not finished'. When you use the imperfect, you are not interested in whether the action or event is finished. Gabriella uses it to describe what her district was like when she and her husband first came there as a young married couple:

Quando siamo venuti a vivere qui c'era la campagna.

When we came to live here, it was the country.

Di fronte c'era una cascina. Opposite there was a farm.

La strada non era asfaltata. The road wasn't made up.

Notice Gabriella says **quando siamo venuti** – that was an event which happened at a specific point in time and then was over and done with so she uses the **passato prossimo**.

The imperfect again: saying what you used to do

You also use the **imperfetto** for repeated or habitual actions in the past:

Quando andavo a fare la spesa, mettevo un paio di scarpe vecchie, perché camminavo sulla terra, sul fango. Poi quando arrivavo sulla strada buona, cambiavo scarpe.

When I went shopping, I used to put on a pair of old shoes because I used to be walking on dirt, on mud. Then when I got to the good (made-up) road, I used to change shoes.

The **imperfetto** is easy to form: you just take the **-re** off the end of the infinitive and add the endings as shown below:

<i>cambiare</i>	<i>mettere</i>	<i>preferire</i>
cambiavo	mettevo	preferivo
cambiavi	mettevi	preferivi
cambiava	metteva	preferiva
cambiavamo	mettevamo	preferivamo
cambiavate	mettevate	preferivate
cambiavano	mettevano	preferivano

The stress falls on the penultimate syllable *except* in the third person plural when, as in the present, it falls on the antepenultimate syllable, the third syllable from the end of the word. Very few verbs are irregular, although **essere**, as you might expect, is; the others are verbs whose infinitives have become shortened in modern Italian from earlier longer forms (see Unit 11, the gerund).

<i>essere</i>	<i>fare</i>	<i>dire</i>	<i>bere</i>	<i>produrre</i>
ero	facevo	dicevo	bevevo	producevo
eri	facevi	dicevi	bevevi	producevi
era	faceva	diceva	beveva	produceva
eravamo	facevamo	dicevamo	bevevamo	producevamo
eravate	facevate	dicevate	bevevate	producevate
erano	facevano	dicevano	bevevano	producevano

Also similar to the gerund are:

dare: davo, davi, dava, davamo, davate, davano

stare: stavo, stavi, stava, stavamo, stavate, stavano

Note: When Gabriella said **cambiavo scarpe**, in English she might have said ‘I used to change my shoes, I changed my shoes, I would change my shoes’, all with the same meaning.

The imperfect is also used for actions that were going on when another event occurred:

Parlavo con Angela quando il telefono ha suonato. Sapete chi era? Era proprio la mamma di Angela che chiamava.

I was talking to Angela when the telephone rang. Do you know who it was? It was Angela's mother calling.

In English we would use 'I was talking'. As was said in relation to the **passato prossimo** it is wiser and more profitable to try to avoid thinking of English and to see the Italian tense system in its own terms. You have two past tenses, one for actions viewed as completed and the other for setting the scene, describing, and also for habitual actions or events. (English has five.)

Exercise 1

Last summer you attended an enjoyable party at the country house of some friends of yours. Here you are recalling some of it. We have helped you, except that you have to put the verbs into the correct tense. Since you are describing the day and your friends, you will need to use the tense for descriptions, the imperfect.

Il tempo (1 essere) così bello. (2 Fare) caldo ma non troppo.
 La campagna (3 avere) ancora il bel verde della primavera.
 I fiori (4 avere) un profumo delicatissimo. Tutti gli amici
 (5 essere) lì. Anna (6 portare), come al solito, un vestito molto
 elegante. Il colore, un giallo chiaro, le (7 andare) benissimo.
 Aldo (8 avere) una maglia fatta a mano, molto grande.
 (9 Sembrare) strano e preoccupato. Infatti abbiamo saputo che
 la sua ditta (10 avere) dei problemi. Meno male che c'
 (11 essere) anche Roberto che gli ha parlato e ha potuto
 aiutarlo. Anche per questo la festa è stata bella, un grande
 successo.

Vocabulary

i fiori	the flowers
le andava benissimo	it suited her very well
abbiamo saputo	we learned (note how the tense of sapere tells us that this happened at a precise time, hence the translation)
la sua ditta	his firm, company
meno male	thank goodness, just as well, luckily

Exercise 2

As a free exercise, describe in writing a happy scene you have been part of in the last year.

Exercise 3

When you were a child, were things very different? Mario is talking about his childhood around 1960. Complete what he says, but be careful: often he includes his brothers and sisters or all the family in what he says, so he will say ‘we...’.

Quando ero bambino, le cose (1 essere) diverse. Mio nonno (2 essere) pescatore. Noi (3 abitare) in Liguria. Mio padre invece (4 lavorare) in un bar. Noi bambini (5 guardare) la TV nel bar, non a casa. A casa non (6 avere) la TV. Mia madre (7 fare) la casalinga. (8 Essere) cinque fratelli e la mamma (9 avere) molto lavoro da fare. Non (10 mangiare) spesso la carne ma naturalmente mio nonno (11 portare) a casa molto pesce. Mia madre (12 fare) i nostri vestiti. Non (13 essere) ricchi come la gente oggi. Ma (14 divertirsi) molto. (15 Essere) felici.

pescatore	fisherman
fare la casalinga	she was a housewife

Exercise 4

Has life changed a lot since you were a child? Write down some of the things you used to do, and things that people did then and they no longer do today. This is another open-ended exercise.

Exercise 5

There’s been an accident. Nothing serious, thank goodness, but two cars have hit each other at the traffic lights and the drivers are looking for witnesses to support their views of what happened. There’s a bar on the corner so they ask the customers **Che cosa ha visto?** Complete the answers.

SIGNORE ANZIANO: Ma, non ho visto niente. (1 Leggere) il giornale.
DUE GIOVANI Non abbiamo visto niente. (2 Parlarsi)

INNAMORATI:	e (3 guardarsi).
CAMERIERE:	Non ho visto niente. (4 Essere) al bar. (5 Aspettare) il barista che (6 fare) due cappuccini.
SIGNORA CON BAMBINO:	Scusi, non ho visto niente. (7 Aiutare) il bambino a mangiare il gelato.
AUTOMOBILISTA:	Ma possibile, tutta questa gente e non hanno visto niente!

due giovani innamorati two young people in love

Do you feel now that you understand better the three uses of the imperfect? In Exercise 1 it was used to describe what things were like on one particular day in the past; in Exercise 3 it was used partly for that and partly to say what people habitually did in the past. In Exercise 5 it was used to say what people were doing at a point in time in the past.

The present continuous: stare + gerund

La zona sta cambiando

Gabriella talks about what her district was like when she and her husband first moved there. She goes on to say that the area is changing again: **la zona sta cambiando**. When there is a need to emphasize that something is happening now, at this moment, Italian uses **stare + gerund**, the *present continuous*. This seems similar to the English present continuous: ‘the area is changing’. But it is not used as much as the English version. It is used *only* when you want to *emphasize* that the action is taking place now.

– **Dov’è Carlo?**

– **E’ in cucina, sta preparando la cena.**

– Where is Carlo?

– He’s in the kitchen, he’s getting supper ready.

– **Che cosa stai facendo?**

– **Sto cercando di riparare la macchina.**

– What are you doing?

– I am trying to repair the car.

Exercise 6

The telephone rings and you answer it. The caller would like to speak to almost anyone in the household except you but they are all busy. Explain what they are doing.

- 1 Vorrei parlare con Paolo. (Tell the caller Paolo is having a shower.) Non può venire al telefono.
- 2 E Aldo? (Tell the caller Aldo is making a bechamel sauce, **una besciamella**.) Non può venire al telefono in questo momento.
- 3 E Maria? (She's reading a story (**un racconto**) to little Anna.)
- 4 E Margherita? (She's out. She's doing the shopping.)
- 5 E il nonno? (He's asleep.)

YOU: Senta. Dico a tutti che Lei ha chiamato e La faccio richiamare appena possibile.
(Look, I'll tell everyone you called and I'll get them to call you back as soon as possible.)

Postscript: stare + gerund

The imperfect of **stare** + gerund can be used to say what *was going on* at a certain point of time in the past when there is a need to emphasize that the action was in progress.

Ho chiamato Giorgio ma stava facendo la doccia. Così ho lasciato un messaggio a sua moglie.

I called George but he was having a shower. So I left a message with his wife.

Scusa, ti ho interrotto. Cosa stavi dicendo?

I'm sorry, I've interrupted you. What were you saying?

More negatives

Non ... mica

Non potevo mica andare in giro con le scarpe coperte di fango, said Gabriella: 'I couldn't go round in shoes covered in mud'. You learned (see Unit 3) that to make a sentence negative you simply put **non** immediately before the verb. In Unit 11 you met **non ... niente/nulla**. Here Gabriella uses a commonly heard form:

non ... mica. It is used to strengthen the negative. (In English you might say 'I couldn't go round in shoes covered in mud, could I?'.) Other ways of emphasizing the negative are **non ... affatto**, **non ... per niente**, **non ... per nulla**. **Mica** belongs very much to the spoken language. The other forms are more acceptable in writing.

Non è mica vero/non è affatto vero.

It's not true at all.

Non lo conosco mica/non lo conosco affatto.

I don't know him at all.

Non lo conosco per niente.

I don't know him at all.

Non è per nulla vero.

It isn't true at all.

The remote past, passato remoto

There is another past tense called, in Italian, the **passato remoto**. It is little used in spoken Italian in the north; in the centre of Italy, it is more common and it is used a lot in the south. Strictly its use is for completed events and actions in a remote past that has no link with the present, i.e. it is similar to the **passato prossimo** but for a remote, not a recent, past. Because storytelling implies a remoteness from the events being recounted, it is usually used in novels and, of course, in history books. Some Italians use it when recounting something that has happened to them but which they now regard as finished. They become 'storytellers' temporarily. Many native speakers hardly ever use the **passato remoto** and the foreign learner can safely defer learning it until he is an advanced student. For completeness and for recognition when necessary, the forms are given in the 'Grammar summary'.

Cultural point

Gabriella talked about the changes in her neighbourhood in Turin since she moved there in 1967. From a zone where a factory had been built on a greenfield site, it developed into a built-up area, becoming part of the city; and now the factory has automated much of the work, or moved it away from northern Italy, so people are tending to move away, seeking a different lifestyle in small towns.

Italy has undergone huge and very rapid change since the Second World War ended in 1945. It needs to be remembered that before the war Italy was a backward, rural society and in 1945 was emerging from twenty years of Fascist rule as well as from being a battleground. Italians had an opportunity to build their country afresh. It was a time of hope and optimism, not only in Italy.

By 1995,* the fiftieth anniversary of the end of the war, things were very different: Italy was one of the foremost industrialized countries in the world and living standards had never been higher, but society was very different and, furthermore, the political system was in crisis. The framework set up by the post-war constitution, popularly known as the First Republic, had collapsed following revelations of widespread corruption in politics and business. In March 1994 a new government, which many had hoped would usher in a Second Republic, was elected, but just before the end of the year it had fallen. The much hoped for Second Republic seemed to have failed.

Reading

The article that follows appeared in *La Stampa* on 2 January 1995. The year marked the fiftieth anniversary of the end of the Second World War. We reproduce extracts, by kind permission of the writer, Lietta Tornabuoni, because it gives some idea of this social change which is why we reproduce the article, even though even more years have passed. The changes since 1995 are of a different order and politically not a great deal has been achieved.

Read the passage carefully, more than once, listening to the recording if you have it. Many of the words are guessable and you should find you can answer the questions below after two or three readings, if not sooner. Then read the notes and finally come back to the passage again. At that stage you can look up any words you haven't managed to work out.

- 1 In the opinion of the writer, what one thing did Italy have for the first time ever at the end of the Second World War?**
- 2 List at least three material goods that Italians did not have at the time.**

* When the first edition of *Colloquial Italian* was written.

- 3 The writer says fewer than 7 per cent of Italians had all of three basic amenities. What were they?**
- 4 What did almost two million Italians do between 1946 and 1957? Why?**
- 5 What do you learn about the Italian language at the end of the Second World War?**
- 6 According to Lietta Tornabuoni, what values guided people at the end of the Second World War, and how do they compare with 1995 values (which are also not very different from today's)?**
- 7 At the end, the writer lists a number of aspects of life that have improved and one that has not. What is that?**

l'Italia 1945–1995

Con gli occhi aperti

Cinquant'anni fa, finita la seconda guerra mondiale, c'era in Italia, per la prima volta, la democrazia. Non c'erano la televisione, la lavatrice, la plastica, l'automobile come veicolo di massa, la pubblicità come linguaggio collettivo, l'elettronica coi suoi computers. Non c'era granchè da mangiare, nelle macerie belliche mancavano gli alloggi: e neppure il sette per cento delle famiglie aveva in casa elettricità, acqua potabile e gabinetto insieme. Non c'era lavoro, bisognava andarselo a cercare fuori, tra il 1946 e il 1957 quasi due milioni di persone emigrarono per lavorare nelle Americhe o in Europa: erano gli unici viaggi degli Italiani e per chi restava i salari erano miseri. Non c'era una lingua comune, davvero usata, quotidiana: al di là dei libri, della scuola, delle leggi o dei documenti, l'italiano rimaneva un'astrazione, si parlavano i dialetti. Non c'era la pratica del consumo, ma l'etica del risparmio; non la pratica dell'edonismo, ma l'etica del sacrificio. Paese rurale, l'Italia era pure un paese sottosviluppato.

In cinquant'anni, la nostra vita è immensamente cambiata, migliorata. Meno fame, meno fatica, meno freddo, meno malattie, più benessere, più libertà, più diritti, più informazione, più divertimento: sono dati indiscutibili . . . Certo è che all'evoluzione del modo di vivere non ha corrisposto l'evoluzione del sistema politico. . . .

(Lietta Tornabuoni, *La Stampa*, 2 gennaio 1995)

Vocabulary

non c'era granchè da mangiare	there wasn't much to eat
macerie belliche	rubble, ruins, left by the war
mancavano gli alloggi	there was a housing shortage
bisognava andarselo a cercare fuori	it was necessary to go off and find it for oneself outside (Italy)
le Americhe	the Americas, North and South
misero/a	paltry, poor, wretched
al di là di	beyond, outside
risparmio	saving, thrift
sottosviluppato	underdeveloped

Language points

coi (con + i)

Coi suoi computers

coi is **con + i**. Some speakers and writers join **con** to **il (col)** and **i (coi)**. It is, however, quite acceptable to say and write **con il** and **con i**.

Some more negatives: neppure, neanche, nemmeno

neppure means 'not even, neither'. **neanche** and **nemmeno** mean the same and work the same way.

*Non ho neppure 10 euro
neanche
nemmeno*

As with **niente**, **nulla**, **mica**, **affatto**, there needs to be a **non** before the verb. (See also Unit 15.)

emigrarono

emigrarono means 'emigrated'. This is a **passato remoto**, third person plural. The writer considers the phenomenon of mass

emigration as belonging to the past, as indeed it does. Italy is now experiencing *immigration* from poorer countries, particularly North Africa and Eastern Europe.

Word power

Superficially, the passage looks difficult. This is partly because to an eye brought up on the English language, words of Latin origin seem erudite. Italian however has grown from Latin, with various other influences mixed in. Words of Latin origin are part and parcel of the normal everyday vocabulary of the man or woman in the Italian street. So rule number one when faced with a passage in Italian is: expect Latinisms.

The passage also contains quite a high proportion of abstract words and this gives the reader a *feeling* it is difficult. But such words are particularly guessable. Intelligent guessing is invaluable when dealing with a foreign language. Using a dictionary takes time and you may not always have one handy. When faced with a word you have not met before you should try to guess. Here are three possible approaches:

- 1 Does it look like a word I know in English? **democrazia** was an easy one. Or **veicolo**. Slip in an 'h': 'vehicle'.
- 2 Sometimes you may not be able to make the link with an English word but you may recognize part of the word as being similar to an Italian word you know. For example, **lavatrice** contains **lava** and you may be able to link that with **lavare** 'to wash', and then guess that a **lavatrice** is some sort of person or machine that washes.
novità may not immediately suggest 'novelty' to you, but it may make you think of **nuovo**. Or, to return to the first strategy, perhaps that would take you to 'innovation' and from there to 'something new'. In the case of **sottosviluppato**, you have met **sotto** 'under' and **sviluppo** 'development'. **migliorata**: do you remember **migliore** 'better'? And **benessere** is **bene** + **essere** 'to be well'. What would **malessere** mean?
- 3 Occasionally neither of these approaches works but you may be able to guess from the context. For instance you have not so far met the word **gabinetto**, used in **elettricità, acqua potabile e gabinetto insieme**. You will realize from the rest of the sentence

that the author is saying that, in 1945, most Italian homes did not have available all three of certain basic conveniences, which we take for granted today. So you might be able to guess that the third of the trio was a *flush lavatory*. This type of guessing is however to be used with caution as it can lead the guesser astray.

14 Alla salute!

Here's to your health!

In this unit you will learn about:

- The difference between **sera/serata, giorno/giornata**
- Object pronouns: with the infinitive, the imperative and **ecco**; the order when there are two of them
- The human body: **il corpo umano**
- Saying you are not well
- Saying you have given something up – another negative

Dialogue 1

Una distorsione alla caviglia

Enzo had planned to go to the cinema yesterday evening with his friends Piero and Elena. However he had a bad cold, so he stayed at home. Now he is telephoning them to hear what they thought of the film.

- 1 How is Enzo's cold today?**
- 2 Did Piero and Elena enjoy the film?**
- 3 What must Elena avoid doing for a week?**

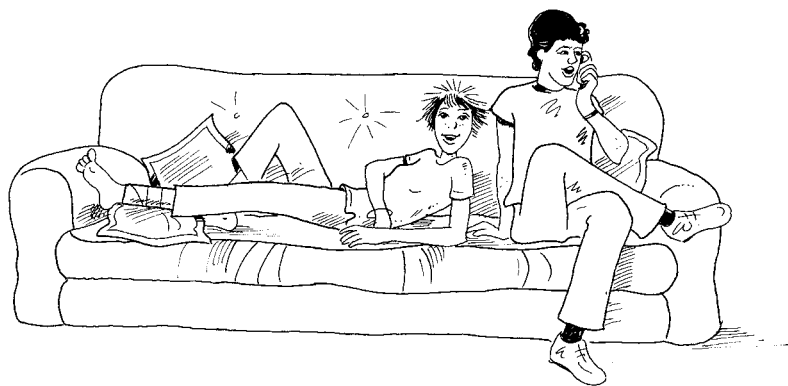
ENZO: Pronto. Ciao Piero, sei tu? Come stai?

PIERO: Io bene, grazie, e il tuo raffreddore?

ENZO: Un po' meglio oggi, grazie. Scusa se non sono venuto con voi ieri. Stavo proprio male. E il film? Come l'avete trovato? Vi è piaciuto?

PIERO: Ma non ci siamo andati.

ENZO: Come mai? Che cosa è successo?



- PIERO: Beh, uscendo di casa Elena è caduta e si è fatta una brutta distorsione alla caviglia. Così invece di andare al cinema, abbiamo passato la serata al pronto soccorso.
- ENZO: Oh, mi dispiace. Come va adesso Elena?
- PIERO: E qui, accanto a me, sdraiata, con il piede su un cuscino. Non deve assolutamente mettere il piede a terra per sette giorni. Vuoi parlarle? Te la passo. Ciao.

Vocabulary

una brutta distorsione alla caviglia	a nasty ankle sprain
pronto soccorso	hospital emergency service
sdraiata	lying down

Language points

Using sera/serata, giorno/giornata

sera refers to the evening as a point in time, i.e. as opposed to the morning or the afternoon.

**Vuoi andare dalla nonna questa *sera* o domani
pomeriggio?**

Do you want to go to grandmother's this evening or tomorrow afternoon?

Lavorare dalla mattina alla sera.

To work from morning to night (evening).

You use **serata** when thinking about the evening as a period of time, about how the evening is spent. Hence:

Abbiamo passato la serata al pronto soccorso.

We spent the evening at the hospital emergency department.

le lunghe serate invernali

the long winter evenings

Compare also **giorno/giornata**. **giorno** is used for the day as a point in time:

- **Che giorno è oggi?** – **E' mercoledì.**
- What day is it today? – It's Wednesday.

Ci sono sette giorni in una settimana.

There are seven days in a week.

You use **giornata** when you are thinking about *how* the daylight hours are spent, the conditions and events in them:

E' stata davvero una giornata bellissima.

It really was a lovely day (meaning 'the weather was wonderful', or 'we had a marvellous time').

People wish you **Buona giornata!** 'Have a nice day!' and **Buona serata!** 'Have a nice evening!' as opposed to **Buongiorno**, **Buona sera**, which are simply greetings without thought about how the day or evening might be spent. The same distinction is true but less commonly met for: **mattina/mattinata** and **anno/annata**. **Un'annata buona** is used in agricultural circles when talking about a 'good year' referring to the quality of the crop that year. When making a rather imprecise appointment you might say:

Passo da te in mattinata/in serata/in giornata.

I'll call on you during the morning/the evening/the day.

More about personal pronouns: object form

Here are three points about the position of pronouns.

- (1) You will remember you were told these pronouns are placed immediately before the verb, but Piero says:

Vuoi parlarle?

Do you want to talk to her?

When used with an infinitive, the object pronoun *follows* the infinitive with its final **e** removed and since the two run together in the sound, they are written joined to it:

Carlo sta suonando il pianoforte. Mi piace sentirlo.

Carlo's playing the piano. I like to hear him.

Dicono che il nuovo film è molto bello. Andiamo a vederlo stasera.

They say the new film is very good. Let's go and see it this evening.

Pronto, Carla? Ciao. Sentì, è arrivato Bernardo. Perché non vieni a trovarlo domani da noi?

Hello, is that Carla? Hi. Bernardo's arrived. Why don't you come and see him at our house tomorrow?

Usually the infinitive will follow another verb as in the above examples, but not necessarily:

Dargli la mia macchina? Neanche per sogno.

Give him my car? Never in a thousand years (lit. 'not even in a dream').

When the first verb is one from that useful trio **volere**, **dovere**, **potere**, the pronoun may be put either before that verb or after the infinitive:

– **Hai telefonato a Giorgio?**

– **Non ancora. Gli devo telefonare oggi.**

Devo telefonargli oggi.

– Have you telephoned Giorgio?

– Not yet. I must ring him today.

– **Hai finito il libro che stavi leggendo?**

– **No. Lo vorrei finire oggi. /Vorrei finirlo oggi.**

– Have you finished the book you were reading?

– No. I'd like to finish it today.

– **Quando può fare questa riparazione?**

– **La posso fare domani. /Posso farla domani.**

– When can you do this repair?

– I can do it tomorrow.

It is simpler for the learner to stick to the second model, thus treating all verbs the same way, but be prepared for the other usage.

(2) The direct object pronouns are also attached to **ecco**:

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| – Eccomi. | – Eccoci. |
| – Here I am. | – Here we are. |
| – Dov'è Giorgio? | – Sta arrivando. Eccolo. |
| – Where's Giorgio? | – He's coming. Here he is. |

Dove abbiamo lasciato la macchina? Ah, eccola.

Where did we leave the car? Ah, there it is.

(3) Imperatives: the object pronouns, including reflexive pronouns, are attached to the ends of imperatives (although there is one exception).

Scusami, Maria. Ti ho fatto male?

Forgive me, Maria. Did I hurt you?

Non preoccuparti.

Don't worry.

In this case you have an imperative formed with the infinitive.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| Ditelo coi fiori. | Say it with flowers. |
| Accomodatevi. | Take a seat. |
| Divertiamoci. | Let's enjoy ourselves. |

Dimmi, Gianni, cosa pensi?

Tell me, Gianni, what do you think?

Note: The doubling of the **m** in **dimmi** is a small point. The verbs in which this happens are **andare (va')**, **dare (da')**, **dire (di')**, **fare (fa')** and **stare (sta')**. The **tu** form of the imperative of these verbs is a monosyllable. The initial consonant of any object pronoun doubles when it is attached to these monosyllables. This applies to all the object pronouns *except gli*. However, the one most commonly heard is **mi**:

Fammi vedere la foto.

Show me the photo (make/let me see the photo).

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| Facci un piacere. | Do us a favour. |
| Dammi la tua valigia. | Give me your suitcase. |
| Dammi la mano. | Give me your hand. |
| Dagli la mia chiave. | Give him my key. |

The *exception* to the rule that the object pronoun is attached to the end of the imperative is the formal, third person imperative. In this case the pronoun precedes the verb:

Mi scusi, signore. Le ho fatto male?

I am sorry, sir. Did I hurt you?

Mi dica.

Tell me. (see below)

S'accomodi.

Take a seat/ sit down.

It helps to use commonly heard forms as models for these rather tricky points. You will hear:

*From your friends
(tu form)*

*From people you do not
know well (Lei)*

Scusami

Mi scusi

Dimmi

Mi dica

Siediti

Si sieda

S'accomodi

dimmi/mi dica are often heard. When you claim a friend's attention by saying his/her name, the response will very often be **dimmi** or **dimmi tutto**. And it is very common for a waiter, a shop assistant etc. to say **mi dica** to indicate he/she is ready to listen to you.

Exercise 1

Finish these remarks as indicated. You will need to use a pronoun.

Example: **Ho finito di leggere il giornale.**

(Do you want to see it?)

Answer: **Vuoi vederlo tu?/Lo vuoi vedere tu?**

- Gianni è un amico molto caro.
(He comes to see us often.)
- Sabato è il compleanno di Andrea.
(I'd like to invite him to supper.)
- Hai già scritto al signor Lombardi?
(No, I must write to him today.)
- Buongiorno, signora.
(Can I help you?)
- Sei mai stato a Parigi?
(No, I hope to go there this year.)

Exercise 2

Answer the following using **ecco** and a pronoun:

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Dove sono i bambini? | 3 Dove sei? |
| 2 Ha il passaporto, signore? | 4 Mi dà le chiavi, per piacere? |

Exercise 3

How would you say the following (a) to a person you do not know well, i.e. using **Lei**, and (b) to a friend?

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Enjoy yourself! | 3 Give me the key, please. |
| 2 Do me a favour. | 4 Tell him to come tomorrow. |

Combining pronouns

You saw in Unit 12 that when **ci** and **ne** occur in the same sentence, **ci** comes first and changes to **ce**: **Ce ne sono tre**. This also happens with **mi**, **ti**, **ci** ('us, to us'), **vi** and the reflexive pronoun **si** before another object pronoun. Piero says:

Te la passo.

I'll pass her to you.

Similarly:

Me lo dici?

Are you going to tell me?

(lit. 'Are you telling me?')

Ce li manda.

He's sending them to us.

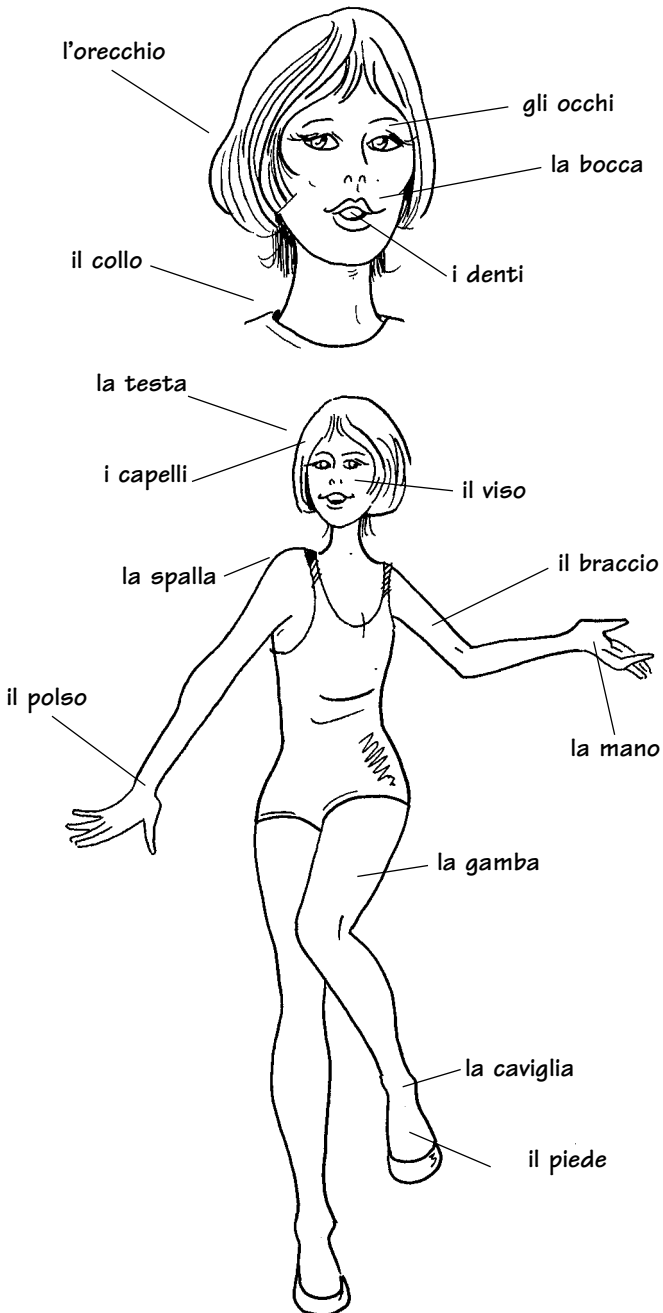
The order is always:

- (1) **mi, ti, si, ci, vi, si**

followed by:

- (2) **lo, la, li, le, ne.**

Note: Remember: **Ce n'è per tutti**, Unit 13, where **ci** is a subject pronoun. The change to **ce** applies to **ci** whether used as subject or object, referring to a person or an object, or meaning 'there' if there is another pronoun following.

The human body: il corpo umano

Vocabulary

Altre parole utili

la gola	throat	il cuore	heart
lo stomaco	stomach	la pelle	skin
il sangue	blood	i polmoni	the lungs
i reni	the kidneys	il fegato	the liver

It is usual not to use the possessive adjective with parts of the body unless it is necessary to make clear whose body the part belongs to (i.e. in rather unusual circumstances).

Elena è accanto a me con il piede su un cuscino.

Si è fatta una brutta distorsione alla caviglia.

There is no doubt whose foot is on the cushion – Elena's. And the same goes for the ankle. Similarly:

Mi lavo le mani.

I am washing/wash my hands.

Dialogue 2

Dal medico

- 1 What are the patient's symptoms?
- 2 What is the doctor's diagnosis?
- 3 What treatment does he recommend?

MEDICO: Buongiorno, signore.

PAZIENTE: Buongiorno, dottore. Ho mal di gola, e mal di testa e mi fa male anche lo stomaco, non ho appetito e mi sento stanco da morire.

MEDICO: Vediamo un po'. (*He takes the patient's temperature and examines him.*) Lei ha la febbre alta. Dovrebbe essere a letto.

PAZIENTE: Che cosa è, dottore?

MEDICO: E solo questa brutta influenza che c'è in giro quest'anno. Le do delle pastiglie e uno sciroppo ma è molto importante tornare a casa, mettersi a letto e riposarsi bene. Bisogna anche bere molto: acqua, tè leggero, eccetera. Niente alcool. E non deve tornare a lavorare se non quando non avrà più la febbre.

Vocabulary

mi sento stanco da morire	I feel dead tired
vediamo un po'	let's see, let's have a look
Lei ha la febbre alta	you have a high temperature (avere la febbre)
questa brutta influenza che c'è in giro	this nasty influenza that is going round
niente alcool	no alcohol
se non quando non avrà più la febbre	until you no longer have a temperature

Saying you are not well

stare male	to be unwell
sto meglio	I feel/am better
sto bene	I'm well
sentirsi bene/male	to feel well/ill
non mi sento bene	I don't feel well
si sente male	he feels poorly
ti senti meglio?	do you feel better?
ho mal di testa	I have a headache
stomaco	stomach-ache
schiena	back ache
denti	toothache
gola	sore throat
mi fa male la caviglia	my ankle hurts
mi fanno male gli occhi*	my eyes hurt

* 'Eyes' are of course plural, hence also the plural verb.

The word for 'pain' is **dolore** (m.). 'A prescription' is **una ricetta**. And you have already met the false friend: **essere ricoverato/a** 'to be admitted to hospital'. **ricoverare qualcuno d'urgenza** means 'to admit someone to hospital as an emergency case'.

Language point

Using non . . . più 'no longer, not any more'

Quando non avrà più la febbre

When you no longer have a high temperature

Avrà is the future of 'have' – see Unit 16.

Una volta Paolo mi scriveva regolarmente ma da un po' non mi scrive più.

At one time Paolo used to write to me regularly but for a while he hasn't written any more.

As with the other negatives, you must put **non** before the verb. With a **passato prossimo** the **più** goes before the past participle:

Non ha più detto niente.

He didn't say anything (any) more.

Exercise 5

You are being asked by your doctor about your habits. Answer saying you used to do all these things but you don't any more.

Example: **Mangia cioccolata?**

Answer: **Una volta, sì, ne mangiavo ma ora non ne mangio più.**

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1 Fuma? | 3 Mangia carne rossa? |
| 2 Beve molto? | 4 Dorme male? |

Exercise 6

Things have changed. Write a new sentence based on the one given saying that it's not happening any more. Say what the resulting sentence means.

Example: **Ci parlavamo spesso.**

Answer: **Non ci parliamo più.**

We don't talk to each other anymore.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1 Lo vedevo spesso. | 3 Lo aiutavo. |
| 2 Mi scriveva spesso. | 4 Ci telefonavamo. |

Cultural point

Italy has a National Health Service, under the Ministero della Salute (www.ministero.salute.it), which, in conception, was based on the British health service, although it was introduced well over thirty years later. It is financed by contributions paid by workers but, as in other countries, is struggling to cope with increasing demands on it.

Prescription charges (**il ticket**) have long been payable. They vary according to the patient's means and also are frequently changed by governments in the annual budget provisions. Sufferers from certain, usually long-term, illnesses, are exempt. There are also charges for various services such as blood tests, X-rays etc.

There is no parallel private service but there are many private organizations, which have agreements with the National Health Service to carry out such tests. Many people prefer to use them because they are quick and efficient, whereas the waiting time for tests in hospital is long. The patient again pays **il ticket**, the standard charge.

Italians tend also to go straight to a specialist they trust (**uno specialista di fiducia**) rather than going first to their general practitioner. They will usually do this privately, i.e. they will pay a fee. Voluntary workers also play a part in provision. For instance, the main organization collecting blood from donors, AVIS, is a voluntary organisation (www.avis.it).

15 Buona fortuna!

Good luck!

In this unit you will learn about:

- Saying what you would do if: the conditional
- How to say 'never', 'not yet', 'no one' and 'neither . . . nor'
- Offering to do something, insisting on doing something
- The imperfect subjunctive: saying if something *were* the case
- The subjunctive and other moods/modes
- The pluperfect subjunctive and the past conditional
- Ways of saying 'perhaps': **forse**, **può darsi** and **magari**
- A way of expressing doubt: **chissà?**

Dialogue 1

La lotteria

*In Italy there are various lotteries, some of which have very big prizes. One is the **lotteria gratta e vinci** – scratch and win. You buy a card and scratch the pictures on it with a coin: you see immediately whether or not you have won. Three friends, Edoardo, Filippo and Elisa, are enjoying a coffee on the terrace outside a bar . . .*

- 1 Does Filippo often buy lottery tickets?**
- 2 What would he do if he won?**
- 3 And Elisa?**

EDOARDO: Compriamo dei biglietti della lotteria?

FILIPPO: Io non vinco mai niente alla lotteria.

ELISA: Compri spesso i biglietti?

FILIPPO: Raramente.

- ELISA: Per questo non vinci mai. Come vuoi vincere se non compri biglietti? Dai, compriamo dei biglietti.
- FILIPPO: Va bene.
- EDOARDO: Vado io a prenderli.
- ELISA: Che cosa faresti se vincessi?
- FILIPPO: Mah, non lo so. Comprerei una macchina nuova. Magari vi porterei a fare il giro del mondo. E tu Elisa?
- ELISA: Comprerei una casa al mare. Ci metterei un pianoforte a coda. Prenderei delle lezioni di piano e passerei le mie giornate a suonare. Inviterei anche gli amici. Quando non suonassi, starei in cucina a preparare dei buoni piatti. Sarebbe una festa continua . . .
- EDOARDO: Allora, ecco il tuo biglietto, Elisa. E il tuo, Filippo. Gratta e vedi se hai vinto.
- FILIPPO: Sì, ho vinto!
- ELISA: Oh, che bello. Facciamo il giro del mondo!
- FILIPPO: Macchè giro del mondo! Ho vinto cinquanta euro!



Vocabulary notes

dai 'go on, come on'. From **dare** and used to encourage someone to do something.

vado io a prenderli 'I'll go and get them'

ho vinto 'I've won'. **vincere** has an irregular past participle: **vinto**.

macchè 'You're joking!' (rough translation). It expresses strong contradiction of what has just been said.

cinquanta euro 50 euros. At the time of writing this might buy a modest restaurant meal for the three friends.

Language points

Saying what you would do if: the conditional

You have met this quite often: **vorrei, dovrei, potrei, mi piacerebbe** etc. And now you have heard people talk about *what they would do if* they won money in a lottery. The base for the conditional is the infinitive without the final **-e**. Here are several verbs: pick out the ending:

<i>dire</i>	<i>fare</i>	<i>dare</i>	<i>prendere</i>	<i>partire</i>
direi	farei	darei	prenderei	partirei
diresti	faresti	daresti	prenderesti	partiresti
direbbe	farebbe	darebbe	prenderebbe	partirebbe
diremmo	faremmo	daremmo	prenderemmo	partiremmo
direste	fareste	dareste	prendereste	partireste
direbbero	farebbero	darebbero	prenderebbero	partirebbero

The stress falls on the penultimate syllable, except in the third person plural when it falls on the antepenultimate syllable (**ebbero**). *Note:* In the first person singular, the **-e-** of the **-ei** ending is a syllable.

A complication is that **-are** verbs make an additional change. The **a** in the infinitive ending becomes an **e**, so that they work like **-ere** verbs:

comprare

comprerei	compreremmo
compreresti	comprereste
comprerebbe	comprerebbero

Predictably, **essere** is irregular:

sarei	saremmo
saresti	sareste
sarebbe	sarebbero

A handful of other verbs, some of which you have already met and got used to, are irregular. They fall into three groups:

- 1 Verbs like **potere** which forms **potrei**: the **e** between the **t** and the **r** has disappeared. Other common verbs like this are:

dovere	→	dovrei	vedere	→	vedrei
andare	→	andrei	sapere	→	saprei
vivere	→	vivrei	avere	→	avrei

- 2 Other verbs, like **volere** which forms **vorrei**, not only have the shortened form but the first consonant changes and becomes the same as the second, giving **-rr-**. Common ones are: **rimanere** → **rimarrei**; **venire** → **verrei**. **bere** is a bit of an oddball and can be thought of as being in this group: **berrei**.

- 3 The verbs **dare**, **fare**, **stare**, make their conditional form thus:

dare	→	darei	fare	→	farei
stare	→	starei			

The conditional is used to:

- express what *you would do* if . . .
- ask politely, make requests seem less assertive, make suggestions in a way that is more polite, even charming, as you have already seen:

Dovresti riposarti domani.

You ought to rest tomorrow.

Saresti molto gentile se . . .

You would be very kind if you . . .

Potresti aiutarmi?

Could you help me?

Dovrebbe essere a letto

(Unit 14, Dialogue 2)

Exercise 1

This is what Marco would do if he won a really big prize in a lottery. Write it in Italian.

Example: He would go to Australia.

Answer: **Andrebbe in Australia.**

- 1 He would move house. (**cambiare casa**)
- 2 He would buy a house with a garden.
- 3 He would marry Anita. (**sposarsi con**)
- 4 They would learn to play golf.
- 5 He would not give up work. (**smettere di lavorare**)

Exercise 2

Well, what would you do if you won the big prize in a lottery?
This is an open-ended exercise.

Using non . . . mai 'never, not ever'

Here is another negative. As with **niente, mica, più**, you must have **non** before the verb:

Non escono mai la sera. A loro non piace lasciare i bambini con una babysitter.

They never go out in the evening. They don't like leaving the children with a babysitter.

Non beve mai alcool.

He/she never drinks alcohol.

Non ho mai capito perché.

I never understood/have never understood why.

Exercise 3

You are being asked whether you do certain things. They are things you would never dream of doing! Say so using **mai**.

- 1 Lei fuma?
- 2 Beve vodka?
- 3 Va spesso in discoteca?
- 4 Compra cibi surgelati (frozen food)?
- 5 Cammina per la strada a piedi nudi?

Other negative expressions

You have now met several negative expressions. The remaining ones are:

- **non ... ancora** ‘not yet’

Non abbiamo ancora mangiato. Perché non viene a mangiare con noi?

We haven't eaten yet. Why don't you come and eat with us?

Non sono ancora pronto. Puoi aspettare?

I'm not ready yet. Can you wait?

Note: **ancora** without **non** means ‘still’:

E' ancora molto giovane. He's still very young.

C'è ancora tempo. There's still time.

or it can be used thus:

Vuoi ancora dell'insalata?

Do you want some more salad?

C'è ancora del caffè?

Is there still (any more) coffee?

- **non ... nessuno** ‘no one’, ‘nobody’, ‘not ... anyone’

Non conosco nessuno a Napoli.

I don't know anyone in Naples.

Non abbiamo visto nessuno.

We didn't see anyone.

It can also precede the verb, in which case **non** is not used:

Nessuno fa le lasagne al forno come mia madre.

No one makes lasagne like my mother.

nessuno can also be used with a noun, i.e. as an adjective. It then behaves like **un**. When there is a verb and **nessuno** comes after it, **non** must precede it:

Non si vende in nessun negozio in questo paese.

It's not sold in any shop in this village.

- **nè ... nè** ‘neither ... nor’, ‘not ... either ... or’

Non conosco nè la signora Biondi nè suo marito.

I know neither Mrs Biondi nor her husband/ I don't know either Mrs Biondi or her husband.

Nè Mario nè Carla possono venire.

Neither Mario nor Carla can come.

Notice in the second case, since **nè . . . nè** precede the verb, **non** is not necessary. This is always the case when the negative expression precedes the verb.

Most negatives can be used alone:

- **Sei andato negli Stati Uniti?** – *Mai.*
- Have you been to the United States? – Never.
- **Chi ti ha aiutato a fare tutto il lavoro?** – *Nessuno.*
- Who helped you do all the work? – No one.
- **Che cosa hai imparato alla conferenza?** – *Niente. Non ho capito!*
- What did you learn at the lecture? – Nothing. I didn't understand!

Reminder: When used with the **passato prossimo**, **niente**, **nulla** and **nessuno** go *after* the past participle. The other negatives go *before* the past participle.

Non ho mangiato niente.
Non ho visto nessuno.

But:

Non ho mai visto il presidente.
più
ancora

With **nè** the negative word goes in front of what it is negating:

Non ho nè mangiato nè bevuto.
Non ho mangiato nè carne nè pesce.

Exercise 4

Say the opposite of the following.

- 1 Vado spesso al cinema.
- 2 Vedo molta gente nella piazza.
- 3 A Maria piace tanto la musica rock.
- 4 Carlo ha molti amici.
- 5 Mangio sempre al ristorante.
- 6 Il direttore beve molto.
- 7 Ho molto da fare.
- 8 E' già arrivato il professore.

Offering to do something, insisting on doing something

How does Edoardo offer to get the lottery tickets? **Vado io a prenderli.** One of the cases in which you use the pronoun **io** rather than omitting it, is when you are offering to do something. In English you would stress the 'I' with your voice. In Italian you put it after the verb:

Lo faccio io.

I'll do it.

Pago io.

I'm paying.

Dialogue 2

Se fossi in te

*Aldo, whose Sicilian holiday we heard about, is troubled. He has been asked by the company he works for to move to the US for two years to oversee a new development the company is planning. It is a promotion and a challenge he would love to accept. But his wife has her career and the children are in high school (**liceo**). Enrico spots him looking glum in the canteen and gets him talking.*

- 1 Is Patrizia, Aldo's wife, pleased at the prospect of two years in the US?**
- 2 Why does Aldo think it may be difficult for Maria to go?**
- 3 Enrico thinks it may offer exciting possibilities for Patrizia. In what way?**
- 4 Why does Enrico think it's an opportunity for the children?**

ENRICO: Bravo, congratulazioni. E' un'occasione meravigliosa. Patrizia dev'essere molto contenta.

ALDO: Magari! Non ho ancora avuto il coraggio di parlargliene. Se fosse casalinga ... Ma ha il suo lavoro che non lascerebbe mai.

ENRICO: Ah, capisco.

ALDO: Poi ci sono i ragazzi. Maria è all'ultimo anno di liceo. Ha la maturità quest'anno e dovrebbe iscriversi all'università in autunno.



- ENRICO: Guarda, Aldo. Se fossi in te, ne parlerei subito con Patrizia. Tenerti tutto per te non risolve niente. E poi, chissà? Potrebbe essere un'opportunità anche per lei. Può darsi che possa avere un anno o due di aspettativa. Forse potrebbe lavorare anche negli Stati Uniti o magari fare un master. Lì sono all'avanguardia nel suo campo.
- ALDO: Non avevo pensato a questo. E' vero. Se potesse aggiornarsi in un'università, ne avrebbe vantaggi per il suo lavoro. Ma i ragazzi, come potrei convincerli? Se avessero 4 o 5 anni, se facessero ancora le elementari. Ma hanno la loro vita, le loro amicizie. Alla loro età è difficile partire.
- ENRICO: Ma Aldo, non lo sai? Due anni negli Stati Uniti e il loro inglese sarebbe perfetto. Oggi è tanto importante per un giovane conoscere bene l'inglese. E anche per loro ci sono possibilità nel campo degli studi.
- ALDO: In effetti, hai ragione.
- ENRICO: Se fossi in te, presenterei la cosa come una decisione collettiva da prendere insieme nell'interesse dell'intera famiglia.

Vocabulary notes

- se fossi in te** 'if I were you' (you can say **se fossi te**, but **in** is often used; **fossi** is explained below, p. 224)
- magari!** 'if only she were!' (in this context; see below, p. 229)

- maturità*** the high school leaving certificate in Italy
(necessary to enrol in a university: see notes)
- aggiornarsi** 'to get up to date'
- le elementari** 'elementary' or 'primary school' (**classi** is understood)

The imperfect subjunctive: 'If I were you . . .'

When you express an idea needing the conditional in the main clause, you need the *imperfect subjunctive* in the 'if' clause. The idea you are expressing is that *if* something were the case, *then* certain things would follow. You are talking about the improbable or even impossible.

Se io fossi in te, direi tutto a Patrizia.

If I were you, I would tell Patrizia everything.

Se avessi tempo, lo farei volentieri ma oggi non posso.

If I had time I would happily do it but today I can't.

Se potesse, ci aiuterebbe.

If he/she could, he/she would help us.

The subjunctive and other moods/modes

Language learners tend to panic at the word *subjunctive*, but they should try not to. What follows is technical but is given to try to clarify what the subjunctive is. Italian grammarians classify verbs into **modi**. This is usually translated into English by the word 'mood' but 'mode' might convey the sense better since the word refers to the *manner* in which the speaker presents the action or state of the verb. The **modi** are:

(a) **Modi finiti**: these have tenses and different forms for each person.

1 The *indicative* (**indicativo**), the mood/mode for presenting facts, straightforward statements:

Carlo mangiava. Charles was eating.

2 The *imperative* (**imperativo**), the mood/mode for giving orders:

Sta' zitto! Be quiet!

* In a recent reform of the education system, the name of the examination was changed to **esame di stato**, but it is still often referred to by the old name **maturità**.

- 3 The *conditional* (**condizionale**), the mood/mode for actions that depend on a condition being fulfilled:

Se venisse, gli parlerei.

If he came, I would speak to him.

- 4 The *subjunctive* (**congiuntivo**), the mood/mode for expressing an element of subjectivity with regard to the action (for example, doubt about it, desire that it should take place etc.). In the case we have been dealing with the speaker is expressing lack of probability.

Se fosse casalinga, le cose sarebbero diverse.

If she were a housewife, things would be different.

- (b) **Modi non finiti**: these do not have different forms according to the person.

- 1 The *infinitive* (**infinito**), this can be present or past:

Present:

essere o non essere

to be or not to be

Past (for verbs using **avere** for the **passato prossimo**):

avere amato e avere perduto

to have loved and lost

Past (for verbs using **essere** for the **passato prossimo**):

essere andato

to have gone

- 2 The *participle* (**participio**), the ending can be changed as if it were an adjective:

finito/a/i/e

finished

- 3 The *gerund*:

andando a Roma

going to Rome

The form of the imperfect subjunctive

The subjunctive has four tenses: present, imperfect, perfect and pluperfect. The form of the imperfect subjunctive is not difficult, and you can use it without knowing the above summary of modes,

but for some learners it helps to get the full picture clear. Take the same root as for the imperfect indicative (see Unit 13). Any verb that has a special root for the imperfect (e.g. **fare**) will have the same special root in the imperfect subjunctive, with three exceptions (see below). The endings are as follows.

<i>parlare</i>	<i>decidere</i>	<i>partire</i>	<i>fare</i>
parlassi	decidessi	partissi	facessi
parlassi	decidessi	partissi	facessi
parlasse	decidesse	partisse	facesse
parlassimo	decidessimo	partissimo	facessimo
parlaste	decideste	partiste	faceste
parlassero	decidessero	partissero	facessero

The stress in the first and third person plural, falls on the antepenultimate syllable.

The three irregular verbs are:

<i>essere</i>	<i>dare</i>	<i>stare</i>
fossi	dessi	stessi
fossi	dessi	stessi
fosse	desse	stesse
fossimo	dessimo	stessimo
foste	deste	steste
fossero	dessero	stessero

The stress occurs as with the regular verbs.

In Dialogue 2 you met the most common use of the imperfect subjunctive. There are those who say the subjunctive is dying in Italian but this usage is very much alive.

Exercise 5

How would you say in Italian:

- 1 If we went to Rome we would see Marco.
- 2 If he wrote to me I would answer.
- 3 If we had the money, we would help him.
- 4 If you won the lottery, Anna, what would you do? (**tu**)
- 5 If you won the lottery, Prof. Turco, what would you do?
- 6 If they knew, they would be pleased.

The pluperfect subjunctive and the past conditional

These are used to say what you would have done if . . . Look at these sentences:

Se avessi saputo, non avrei parlato così.

If I had known, I would not have spoken in that way.

Se fossimo partiti un quarto d'ora prima, saremmo arrivati in tempo.

If we had set off a quarter of an hour before, we would have arrived in time.

The events have taken place, they are past, but *if only the clock could be put back* . . . In order to express that idea, both tenses have been put into the past, using **avere** plus a past participle in the case of verbs that form their **passato prossimo** with **avere**, and **essere** for those that make it with **essere**. The names given to these tenses are:

Pluperfect subjunctive:

avessi saputo, fossimo partiti

Past conditional:

avrei parlato, saremmo arrivati

Note: In colloquial speech this idea can be expressed by two imperfect tenses:

Se mi diceva che era stanco, lo aiutavo.

If he had told me he was tired, I would have helped him.

Se non andavo alla festa di Giulia, non incontravo Tommaso.

If I hadn't gone to Giulia's party, I wouldn't have met Tommaso.

This way of avoiding the subjunctive is one that some Italians prefer to take – and you might too.

Exercise 6

Did you ever play the game of consequences? Here are some actions and their consequences. If one thing hadn't happened neither would the other. Or if someone had done something, something else would not have occurred. Can you say this?

Example: **Sono arrivata in ritardo. Mio marito si è arrabbiato.**

Answer: **Se non fossi arrivata in ritardo, mio marito non si sarebbe arrabbiato.**

If I hadn't arrived late, my husband would not have got angry.

- 1 Non mi ha detto che era stanco. Non l'ho aiutato.
- 2 Ha bevuto tanto. Si è sentito male.
- 3 E' andato veloce. Ha avuto un incidente.
- 4 Sono andata alla festa da Giulia. Ho incontrato Tommaso.
- 5 Ho comprato un biglietto della lotteria. Ho vinto un premio.

Ways of saying 'perhaps'

While talking of the unlikely and what one would do if circumstances allowed, you often need to say 'perhaps, maybe'. Italian has more than one word for this.

Using forse

forse is problem-free. It expresses doubt, uncertainty, hesitation or possibility, including the idea of hope:

Forse viene domani.

He/she may be coming tomorrow, perhaps he/she'll come tomorrow.

E' stato forse un errore.

Maybe it was a mistake.

Using può darsi

può is of course the third person singular of the verb **potere** 'to be able'. You can also say **può essere**. Used by itself **può darsi** is very common and does not present any problems; but to introduce a clause it becomes **può darsi che** and needs to be followed by a subjunctive:

Può darsi che possa avere un anno o due di aspettativa.

Maybe she'll be able to have a year or two's leave.

This form and use of the subjunctive will be dealt with in Unit 17.

Using magari

magari has two meanings. The tone of voice tells you which.

(a) ‘Perhaps’ (like **forse**):

Magari viene domani.

He may be coming tomorrow.

Magari è stato un errore.

Perhaps it was a mistake.

(b) ‘Would that it were so’, expressing strong desire or hope:

– **Hai vinto?**

– Did you win?

– **Magari!**

– I wish I had!

– **Patrizia deve’essere contenta . . .**

– **Magari!**

– Patrizia must be pleased . . .

– I wish she were!

In this use it can be used with the imperfect subjunctive:

Magari fosse vero!

Would to God it were true!

Expressing doubt: chissà?

This literally means ‘who knows?’ and can also be written **chi sa?**. It is also used to express doubt, uncertainty or vague hopefulness:

Ci rivediamo, ma chissà quando.

See you again, but goodness knows when.

Reading

Per le vie dei borghi d.o.c.

I paesini più belli d’Italia

- 1 What are the two requisites to qualify for membership of the club?
- 2 The author is suggesting by implication that the readers will want to . . . do what?

C'è un nuovo club, molto esclusivo, i cui soci meritano di essere conosciuti. E' il "Club dei Borghi più belli d'Italia". L'idea di un marchio di qualità da applicare ai paesi è venuto all'Anci, l'Associazione Nazionale dei Comuni Italiani (il sito: www.anci.it). Il borgo doc deve avere un centro storico con massimo 2 mila abitanti (15 mila nell'intero comune) e, soprattutto, una notevole qualità urbanistica e architettonica, certificata dalla Sovrintendenza alle Belle Arti. Paesini dalle magiche atmosfere, quindi, in cui siano bandite brutture come le antenne paraboliche, le insegne al neon, gli infissi di alluminio e persino l'asfalto delle strade, sostituito dall'acciottolato originario. Ecco allora i nomi e la storia di alcuni "soci" poco conosciuti, per visitarli in un weekend da fiaba.

(Adapted from an article in *Vera* magazine, March 2003, by kind permission of the publishers)

Vocabulary notes

d.o.c. denominazione di origine controllata Here borrowed from a quality mark applied to wines.

urbanistica As a noun, **urbanistica** is the art of planning towns etc. so that they are rational and aesthetically pleasing: town planning. These towns are old of course.

architettonico Relating to architecture.

Sovrintendenza alle Belle Arti The body charged with the conservation of monuments, archeological sites etc.

bandite (f. pl) 'banished, prohibited'

antenne paraboliche 'satellite dishes'

infissi 'window frames'

soci (sing. **socio**) 'members'

Cultural point

The article mentions the National Association of Italian **Comuni**. At all levels of administration there are groupings that work together for their mutual interests, pooling resources and ideas. You may like to visit the ANCI website: www.anci.it. For the **borghi d.o.c.** you will find it easier to go straight to www.borghitalia.it, which gives you links to each individual member. Regions group in the **Conferenza dei Presidenti delle Regioni e delle Province Autonome** (www.regioni.it). This site has links to each region. Similarly www.comuni.it. There are a lot of comuni.

16 Progetti e previsioni – che sarà, sarà

Plans and predictions – what will be, will be

In this unit you will learn how to:

- Talk about what you intend to do: the future
- Understand business letters
- Say you can or can't manage something: **ce la faccio/non ce la faccio**
- Use **andarsene** 'to leave', **cavarsela** 'to get by'
- Say you said you would do something
- Make the past participle agree when necessary
- Use the present for talking about the future
- Another use of the future: say something is likely, probable
- Access the internet for Italian websites

Dialogue 1

Benissimo. Possiamo firmare

Angela Smith had come to Italy to talk about a new project, you may remember. Her company has bought robots for welding from Mr Rossi's company in the past and now plans to update its equipment over the next two years. Here she is with Mr Rossi. Everything has been discussed, the robots have been demonstrated and Angela is satisfied they will meet her firm's needs. She and Mr Rossi are confirming the agreement verbally before signing the contract for the first consignment.

- 1 How many robots is Angela ordering at this stage?
- 2 What discount has Mr Rossi's company offered?
- 3 What percentage of the total price will be withheld until one month from the date of installation?
- 4 Who will see to the installation?
- 5 What does Mr Rossi promise to do during his next visit to England?

ANGELA: Allora, siamo d'accordo. Prendiamo il modello Merlino X390B specifico per la saldatura.

ROSSI: Ne avete bisogno di quattro, vero?

ANGELA: Per ora, sì. Ci fate uno sconto del 15%?

ROSSI: Sì, è inteso. Il pagamento si farà come concordato, cioè: il 30% alla firma dell'ordine, il 60% alla consegna e il restante 10% a 30 giorni. La consegna si farà come promesso, cioè fra due mesi. Al momento della consegna verrà un nostro tecnico che provvederà all'installazione dei robot.

ANGELA: Benissimo. Possiamo firmare il contratto, così Le verso anche l'assegno.

ROSSI: La ringrazio. Sono sicuro che si troverà bene come sempre anche con questo nuovo modello.

ANGELA: Sicuramente. Spero che venga a vedere dove verranno installati. Così si renderà conto di come stiamo crescendo.

ROSSI: Grazie, mi farebbe piacere. Verrò senz'altro durante il mio prossimo viaggio in Inghilterra.

Vocabulary

firmare, una firma	to sign, a signature
la saldatura	welding
la consegna	delivery, handing over
Le verso l'assegno	I will pay you the cheque (versare is used in banking to mean 'pay in, remit')
spero che venga	I hope you will come (present subjunctive, see Unit 17)
si renderà conto di come stiamo crescendo	you will realize how we are growing
senz'altro	without fail, of course

Language points

Talking about what you intend to do: the future

Il pagamento si farà come concordato.

Payment will be made as agreed.

verrà un nostro tecnico che provvederà all'installazione

one of our technicians will come and he will take care of the installation

Sono sicuro che si troverà bene come sempre . . .

I am sure you will be pleased as always . . .

si renderà conto . . .

you will realize, understand . . .

Verrò senz'altro durante il mio prossimo viaggio.

I'll come without fail during my next trip.

dove verranno installati

where they will be installed

venire is used in this last example to form the passive – see Unit 9.

The future tense is formed on the same base as the conditional: the infinitive minus the final **-e**. Here are the future forms of each type of regular verb and of three irregular verbs. **essere** is unique; **avere** and **venire** represent the two types of irregular verbs we showed you when dealing with the conditional.

<i>comprare</i>	<i>prendere</i>	<i>partire</i>	<i>essere</i>	<i>avere</i>	<i>venire</i>
comprerò	prenderò	partirò	<i>sarò</i>	avrò	verrò
comprerai	prenderai	partirai	<i>sarai</i>	avrà	verrai
comprerà	prenderà	partirà	<i>sarà</i>	avrà	verrà
compremo	prenderemo	partiremo	<i>saremo</i>	avremo	verremo
comprete	prenderete	partirete	<i>sarete</i>	avrete	verrete
compreranno	prenderanno	partiranno	<i>saranno</i>	avranno	verranno

Notes

- As with the conditional, the vowel in the **-are** infinitive ending becomes **e**.

- 2 There is a one-letter difference in spelling between the first person plural of the future and the same part of the conditional. It reflects a difference of pronunciation:

<i>Future</i>		<i>Conditional</i>	
saremo	we shall/will be	saremmo	we should/would be
prenderemo	we shall/will take	prenderemmo	we should/would take
verremo	we shall/will come	verremmo	we should/would come

It is vital to distinguish the single **m** of the future from the double **m** of the conditional. Pronouncing one **m** or two changes the meaning.

Exercise 1

Translate these sentences into Italian. They concern the visit of Mr Rossi's technician to install Angela Smith's robots.

- 1 Our technician will arrive at East Midlands airport at 16.00 on 17 July.
- 2 He will start the installation on the 18th.
- 3 He will finish by (**entro**) the end of the month.
- 4 He will need a room in a hotel.
- 5 Will it be possible to meet him at the airport? (meet: use **prendere**)
- 6 Will you be able to give him a car for the period?
- 7 He will explain the robots to your technicians during the installation.

Exercise 2

You are tired. Someone is asking you whether you have done certain things or whether you are going to do them now. Promise to do each tomorrow.

Example: **Sei andato a fare la spesa?**

Answer: **Andrò domani a fare la spesa.**

- 1 Hai spedito le cartoline?
No, le _____ domani.

- 2 Vuoi finire questo lavoro oggi?
No, lo _____ domani.
- 3 Telefoni a Mario oggi?
No, gli _____ domani.
- 4 Vuoi ritirare oggi i biglietti per il nostro viaggio?
No, li _____ domani.
- 5 Mi puoi aiutare adesso a fare la traduzione?
No, ti _____ domani.

Business letters

Business letters are more difficult than those between friends. It is usual to address a firm or organization as **Spettabile**, usually abbreviated to **Spett.le**, and to put the address the letter is going to at the top. **Alla cortese attenzione di** indicates whose attention the letter is for. The subject of the letter is set out in the heading, preceded by the word **oggetto**. Often a stylized business Italian is still used. Here are two examples of the type of letter Mr Rossi's company (Robotica Milanese) writes and receives:

Spett.le Ace Motori. S.r.l.
Via Gramsci 121,
Collegno (TO)

Alla cortese attenzione dell'Ing. Mancuso

Cinisello Balsamo, 20/03/2004

Oggetto: NS. OFFERTA N. 2430/04

Con la presente, siamo lieti di sottoporVi la ns. migliore offerta per l'impianto di Vs. interesse.

Rimanendo a disposizione per qualunque chiarimento tecnico commerciale, porgiamo distinti saluti.

M. Rossi
Area Manager
Robotica Milanese S.p.A.

- 1 **Whose attention is this letter for?**
- 2 **Can you guess what 'ns.' and 'Vs.' mean?**
- 3 **What is the letter about?**

Note the addressee's name is put at the top right. And the place of writing is often stated with the date of the letter.

An incoming letter is shown below:

Spett.le Robotica Milanese,
Via Leonardo da Vinci 10,
Cinisello Balsamo (MI)

Bologna, 10/6/2004

Alla C. A. Ing. Tondelli

NS. Rif: 140/04/C

OGGETTO: RICHIESTA DI INTERVENTO

Come già comunicato telefonicamente in data odierna, con la presente richiediamo con urgenza il Vs. intervento tecnico su impianto robotizzato ARTU' da Voi vendutoci.

RingraziandoVi per la collaborazione, con l'occasione porgiamo distinti saluti.

N. Bortolotti
Meccanica Panigale S.p.A.

- 1 **What is the letter asking for?**
- 2 **Robotica Milanese will not be surprised to get this request. Why?**

Vocabulary

in data odierna of today's date

Common abbreviations are

ns.	nostro	
Vs.	Vostro	
C.A.	cortese attenzione	
u.s.	ultimo scorso	last month
p.v.	prossimo venturo	next month
c.m.	corrente mese	this month
gg.	giorni	days
S.r.l.	società a responsabilità limitata	limited company
IVA	imposta sul valore aggiunto	VAT – value added tax

Openings

To a firm:	Spett.le ditta/società
To a man:	Egregio dott. Manzini
To a woman:	Gentile dott.ssa Vasino

Common closing salutations

Porgiamo distinti saluti.

Cogliamo l'occasione per porgerVi i nostri più distinti saluti.

RingraziandoVi anticipatamente, con l'occasione porgiamo distinti saluti.

Note the practice of capitalizing **Voi**, **Vi** and **Vostro**. It is regarded as a courtesy to the company, as with *Lei* to individuals.

Reading

These days, much business is done using emails, which are less formal than letters. Their very nature seems to mean writers do not bother to correct spelling, nor observe the conventions of letter-writing. Here, however, is an email couched in formal, elegant Italian. Zanichelli Editore is a publishing house specializing in dictionaries etc. This circular email from them offers to send recipients information about their new publications.

Can you guess the meaning of the following:

- 1 invio automatico**
- 2 opere di consultazione**
- 3 L'iscrizione è assolutamente gratuita e non comporta alcun obbligo di acquisto**
- 4 senza immagini o allegati**
- 5 casella di posta elettronica**
- 6 senza alcun costo o onere**

From: notiziario_zanichelli@zanichelli.it
To: sophie.rolfe@virgin.net
Sent: 27 July 2004 20:00
Subject: O Invito all'iscrizione al Notiziario
Dizionari e opere di consultazione Zanichelli

Gentile Lettore,

Le scriviamo per informarLa che Zanichelli editore ha attivato un servizio di invio automatico di e-mail allo scopo di segnalare tempestivamente le novità editoriali riguardanti il settore Dizionari e opere di consultazione.

Con la presente, Le proponiamo di iscriversi a questo servizio. L'iscrizione è assolutamente gratuita e non comporta alcun obbligo di acquisto.

Le e-mail che Le invieremo saranno di dimensione ridotte, senza immagini o allegati e tali comunque da non creare problemi di alcun genere alla Sua casella di posta elettronica.

In qualsiasi momento Lei potrà decidere la cancellazione del Suo nominativo dalla mailing list senza alcun costo o onere.

Per iscriversi è sufficiente rispondere a questo messaggio, indicando esplicitamente la propria volontà di aderire.

Con i nostri migliori saluti.

Bernardo Cioni

Servizio Sviluppo

Zanichelli editore S.p.A.

Zanichelli editore S.p.A.

Sede: Via Irnerio 34, 40126 Bologna

Capitale euro 25.000.000 - Partita Iva 03978000374

Codice Fiscale e n. iscr. nel Registro delle Imprese
08536570156

R.E.A. n. 329604

<http://www.zanichelli.it/dizionari>

Vocabulary

O = Oggetto	as in business letters, in spite of being preceded by ‘Subject’
in qualsiasi momento	at any time
la propria volontà	your (own) wish

Cultural point

You will notice that the email format uses English. Notice also **mailing list**. Zanichelli produces dictionaries, so note their precision in the use of the word **e-mail**, although, as has been said, many Italians use **mail**. The Italian term is in the passage but is not often used. The company address is given in the same format that would appear on headed paper. **Sede** means ‘Head office’. **Partita IVA** is the VAT registration number and **Codice Fiscale** is the tax reference number. Individuals also have a **Codice Fiscale**.

Dialogue 2

Un invito

Angela’s visit to her cousin proved to be the start of a friendship. Gabriella had promised to take Angela to spend a day at the farmhouse she and her husband are restoring in the country. On one of Angela’s trips to Italy, Gabriella telephones her at her hotel in Turin.

1 How is Angela going to get to the farmhouse?

2 When must she be ready?

- GABRIELLA: Pronto. Angela? Ciao. Sono Gabriella. Come va?
 ANGELA: Gabriella, ciao! Che piacere! Io sto benissimo grazie. E tu?
 GABRIELLA: Anch’io, bene, grazie. Senti, questo fine settimana andiamo in campagna. Ti ricordi che abbiamo una vecchia cascina? Avevamo detto che ti avremmo portata a passare una giornata lì. Vuoi venire con noi questa volta?
 ANGELA: Sì, mi farebbe molto piacere. A che ora partite?

- GABRIELLA: Ci piacerebbe partire presto. Se passiamo a prenderti all'albergo sabato alle otto, ce la fai?
 ANGELA: Certo che ce la faccio. Sarò pronta alle otto.
 GABRIELLA: Allora, arriverci a sabato.

Vocabulary

avevamo detto we had said (some time in the past)

Using ce la fai?

ce la fai? (from **farcela** 'to manage') is a widely used idiomatic expression. The two object pronouns, **ce la**, do not refer to anything specific and do not change.

ce la faccio	I am managing	ce la facciamo
ce la fai		ce la fate
ce la fa		ce la fanno

Ce la fai?	Can you manage (it)?
Non ce la faccio.	I can't manage (it).
Ce l'ho fatta.	I did it/I've done it.

Two other common expressions use combined pronouns. In these the first pronoun is a reflexive pronoun and changes with the subject of the sentence.

andarsene 'to go (away), to leave'

me ne vado	I'm going (away)	ce ne andiamo
te ne vai		ve ne andate
se ne va		se ne vanno

cavarsela 'to get by'

me la cavo	I get by	ce la caviamo
te la cavi		ve la cavate
se la cava		se la cavano

Saying you said you would . . .

Avevamo detto che ti avremmo portata . . .

avevamo detto is the imperfect of the auxiliary plus the past participle, corresponding to the English 'we had said'. It puts the

saying further back in the past than **abbiamo detto** ‘we said’. No problems here. But in Italian, when reporting words that were originally in the future (**ti porteremo** ‘we will take you’), you use the *past conditional*, not the conditional. The past conditional is made using the conditional of **avere** or **essere**, according to the verb, plus the past participle. In the following examples the actual words are shown first and then a reported version:

Arriverò prima delle otto.

Ha detto che sarebbe arrivato prima delle otto.

He said he would arrive before eight.

Ti aiuterò di sicuro.

Mi ha risposto che mi avrebbe aiutato di sicuro.

He answered that he would certainly help me.

Andremo al mare domenica.

Hanno detto che sarebbero andati al mare domenica.

They said they would go to the seaside on Sunday.

Making the past participle agree

Ti avremmo portata . . .

When used with **avere**, it is usual to make the past participle agree with a direct object pronoun preceding it. The agreement is also made with **ne**:

La mela? L’ho mangiata.

The apple? I’ve eaten it.

– **Dove sono i bambini?**

– Where are the children?

– **Non lo so, non li ho visti.**

– I don’t know, I haven’t seen them.

Exercise 3

Complete the past participle in the following sentences:

1 E’ arrivata tua mamma? Non l’ho vist _____

2 Hai visto i miei occhiali? Li ho smarrit _____

3 E’ buona questa torta. Ne hai mangiat _____

4 Hai assaggiat _____ anche il gelato?

smarrire

to mislay (**oggetti smarriti** ‘lost property’)

assaggiare

to taste, try (food, drink)

Don't forget that when the verb is conjugated with **essere** the participle agrees with the subject.

Anna è andata a comprare il pane.

Anna has gone to buy bread.

More about the future

When talking about the future the *present tense* is often used, as indeed it is in English:

Andiamo in campagna questo fine settimana.

We are going to the country this weekend.

Andate al cinema stasera?

Are you going to the cinema this evening?

Lo faccio subito.

I'll do it immediately.

It is not *wrong* to use the future in these cases. The future tends to emphasize intention or advance planning, so Angela says:

Sarò pronta.

I'll be ready.

Quest'estate andremo in California.

This summer we are going (i.e. we have plans to go) to California.

The future can be used when contrasting a *near future* with a more distant future:

Questa sera non usciamo; venerdì però andremo a teatro.

We aren't going out tonight; on Friday however we are going to the theatre.

The following expressions are often associated with the future:

entro giovedì	by Thursday
entro domani	by tomorrow
fra due ore	in two hours' time
fra due giorni	in two days' time
fra poco	in a little while
la settimana prossima	next week
l'anno prossimo	next year

lunedì prossimo	next Monday
domani	tomorrow
dopodomani	the day after tomorrow

A common use of the future is to suggest something is *possible*, implying it is likely but you can't confirm it as fact:

- **Dov'è Giorgio?**
– Where's Giorgio?
- **Sarà in ufficio.**
– He'll be in his office/he's likely to be in his office.

Anna è partita questa mattina. Sarà già a Roma.
Anna left this morning. She's probably already in Rome.

Following from this, you will notice the *past conditional* used in journalism, particularly when the journalist is reporting what is thought to have happened rather than a fact:

Il conducente della macchina si sarebbe addormentato al volante.

The driver of the car appears to have fallen asleep at the wheel.

Il ministro avrebbe promesso una nuova riunione con il sindacato per domani.

It seems the Minister promised a new meeting with the union tomorrow.

Cultural point

The internet

You will probably want to look for Italian internet sites. Useful search machines are:

- www.google.it
- www.altavista.it

The Italian Embassy in London has a very useful website (www.embitaly.org.uk), which includes a list of Italian search engines and portals (doubtless the work of a particular enthusiast): go to the site index. There are also links to many different websites

holding a variety of information about Italy. When surfing (**navigare in internet**), you will find English terms widely used or adapted (e.g. **un programma antivirus**, **un sito**, **chat** (meaning ‘chat room’ as well as the system of exchanging chat), **newsgroup**). Official government sites and, even more so, local authority sites are worth visiting. Try, for instance, www.comune.torino.it or www.comune.roma.it.

17 Un vestito per un matrimonio

A dress for a wedding

In this unit you will learn about:

- Clothes
- Saying what you think, what you want, what you need etc.: the present subjunctive
- Small towns, off the beaten track, for you to seek out when you are in Italy

Dialogue 1

Desidero che mi dia un consiglio

Angela has been invited to a wedding and she thinks it would be fun to buy an outfit in Italy to wear to it. However, she doesn't know the shops well and so she telephones signora Rossi to ask her advice. She starts by asking how signora Rossi is.

1 Who is getting married?

2 What type of outfit does Angela say she wants?

ANGELA: Mi scusi se La disturbo. La chiamo perché desidero che mi dia un consiglio.

SIG.RA R: Ma molto volentieri se posso.

ANGELA: Ecco: la figlia della mia cugina di Torino si sposa a settembre. Mi piacerebbe comprare un abito per la cerimonia in Italia ma non so dove si possa trovare un vestito adatto che non sia troppo impegnativo. Infatti, bisogna che sia elegante ma se possibile che si adatti anche ad importanti occasioni di lavoro. Dunque voglio che sia semplice e anche che abbia un buon taglio e un bel tessuto.

SIG.RA R: Non c'è nessun problema, anzi mi farebbe molto piacere accompagnarLa in qualche negozio. Penso che sia possibile trovare qualcosa che Le piaccia. E' libera domani?

Vocabulary notes

ecco 'well' (in this context). Here, Angela is indicating she is about to give an explanation, a common use of **ecco**.

vestito 'clothes, a dress, an outfit'. The word can be applied to clothes for men or women.

abito 'a dress' (for a woman), 'a suit' (for a man). Add **da uomo** or **da donna** when necessary.

impegnativo 'exacting, binding'. Angela doesn't want to buy something that will be suitable only for the wedding. There is also the idea that it should not cost too much. **un impegno** is 'a pledge'; but also 'an engagement'. **sono impegnato/a** means 'I have an engagement'.

tessuto 'fabric, material' (also **stoffa**)

Language points

Saying what you think, what you want, what you need: the present subjunctive

We explained in Unit 15 that the subjunctive is used when there is an element of subjectivity in the way the action is being presented. In Dialogue 1 above a number of present subjunctives occur. Be warned: they do not always translate neatly into a similar English structure.

Desidero che mi dia un consiglio.

I want you to give me some advice.

Bisogna che sia semplice ma che si adatti anche ad importanti occasioni di lavoro.

It needs to be elegant but it must adapt to important working occasions as well.

Voglio che sia semplice e che abbia un buon taglio . . .

I want it to be simple and to have a good cut . . .

(to be well cut) . . .

Penso che sia possibile trovare qualcosa che Le piaccia.

I think it is possible to find something you will like.

Form

The form is not difficult. There are two types: (1) verbs in **-are**; and (2) the rest. In the singular, there is one form for all persons. For this reason the subject pronouns are often used with the subjunctive. The **-ire** group subdivides: verbs that have **-isc-** in the present indicative also have it in the present subjunctive. You will also notice one form that is the same as that of the present indicative for all verbs. Which is it? Also, as you look, think whether one of the parts reminds you of another mood you have met.

(io)	parli	venda	capisca	parta
(tu)	parli	venda	capisca	parta
(lui/lei)	parli	venda	capisca	parta
(noi)	parliamo	vendiamo	capiamo	partiamo
(voi)	parliate	vendiate	capiate	partiate
(loro)	parlino	vendano	capiscano	partano

The stress in the third person plural is always, as in many other moods and tenses, on the antepenultimate syllable: **parlino**, **capiscano** etc.

Yes, the first person plural, the **noi** form, is the same as for the present indicative. And the singular form is the same as that of the formal imperative (**-are** verbs: **scusi**; other verbs: **sentà, dica**). Verbs that are irregular in the formal imperative are also irregular in the subjunctive. Common irregular subjunctives are:

<i>essere</i>	<i>avere</i>	<i>andare</i>	<i>fare</i>	<i>dare</i>	<i>dire</i>	<i>venire</i>
sia	abbia	vada	faccia	dia	dica	venga
sia	abbia	vada	faccia	dia	dica	venga
sia	abbia	vada	faccia	dia	dica	venga
siamo	abbiamo	andiamo	facciamo	diamo	diciamo	veniamo
siate	abbiate	andiate	facciate	diate	diciate	veniate
siano	abbiano	vadano	facciano	diano	dicano	vengano

The *perfect subjunctive* is formed with **avere** or **essere** and the past participle:

Credo che abbia finito di piovere.

I think it has stopped raining.

Uses

When is the present subjunctive used? This is more difficult to grasp than the form and a comprehensive treatment is beyond the scope of this introductory book. The subjunctive is used mostly in subordinate clauses, and is usually preceded by **che**. The most frequent uses are the following:

(1) After verbs expressing an *opinion*, or perhaps casting doubt: **penso che ...**, **credo che ...**; the negative in particular casts doubt: **non penso che ...**, **non so se ...** :

Penso che sia possibile ...

I think it is possible ...

Credo che abbia finito ...

I think he/she has finished ...

(I think so, but I am not sure)

Non so se sia possibile ...

I don't know whether it is possible ...

Spero che venga ...

I hope you'll come ...

In the last case (from Unit 16, Dialogue 1) the use of the subjunctive implies doubt. **sperare** can also be used followed by the indicative, indicating the speaker thinks the event will take place.

Remember **secondo me**. It is a way of saying what you think without needing a subjunctive, or indeed a verb (see Unit 5, Dialogue 1).

(2) After verbs expressing desire, will, regret, fear and some other emotions: the most common is **desire** 'wanting':

Desidero che mi dia un consiglio.

I want you to give me some advice.

Voglio che sia semplice.

I want it to be simple.

Note: If the same person is the subject of both verbs you can use the infinitive:

Desidero darLe un consiglio.

I want to give you some advice.

(*I want* and *I am giving* the advice.)

(3) After a number of *impersonal verbs*: **occorre che, bisogna che, è necessario che, è possibile che, può darsi che, sembra che, pare che, basta che, è meglio che** etc.:

Bisogna che sia elegante ma ... che si adatti anche ad importanti occasioni di lavoro.

It must be elegant but it must be suitable for important professional occasions too.

Può darsi che possa avere un anno o due di aspettativa.

(see Unit 15, Dialogue 2)

Maybe she'll be able to have a year or two's leave.

(4) After a *relative pronoun* when the clause is referring to a type rather than the particular:

... qualcosa che Le piaccia

... something that you like

Ci vuole un governo che sappia modernizzare il paese.

What is needed is a government that knows how to modernize the country.

Note: If you are describing a particular government, not a type of government, you would say:

Abbiamo un governo che sa quello che fa.

We have a government that knows what it is doing.

(5) The subjunctive is also used after a number of *conjunctions* including **benché** 'although', **poiché** 'since, as' (causal), **perché** 'so that' (not when meaning 'because'), **prima che** 'before':

Benché abbia ormai sessant'anni, è sempre molto giovane di spirito.

Although he (she) is now sixty, he (she) is very young in spirit.

Facciamolo prima che cambi idea.

Let's do it before he (she) changes his (her) mind.

All this is probably more than you can absorb in one reading. It also needs to be said that the present subjunctive belongs to fairly formal, careful speech and there is a tendency in spoken Italian to avoid it. The choice depends on the person speaking and how careful he wants his way of speaking to be. Many educated people, however, look down on someone who does not use the subjunctive: a few years ago, for example, a minister of education was the subject of some mockery because of his failure to use it.

As you can see, the forms are very similar to the indicative so, as a foreign speaker of Italian, you should not worry unduly. It is not necessary to master all the intricate details in the relatively early stages of language learning. The use of the subjunctive learned in Unit 15 will probably prove more useful to you. At this stage, you should be noting subjunctives as you meet them so that, with practice, you will gradually understand them and be better able to get them right. Nevertheless, here is some practice for you.

Exercise 1

In the following exchanges the second speaker is uncertain about the facts. Can you supply the correct form of the verb to convey this uncertainty.

Example: – **Devo andare in banca.**
 – **Non credo che (essere) _____ aperta**
a quest'ora.
Sono già le diciassette. (sia)

- 1 – Aldo dice che Giorgio viene alla festa domani. E' vero?
 – Non penso che (venire) _____. Non sta molto bene.
- 2 – E' partita Anna?
 – Non credo che (essere partita) _____. Mi ha telefonato questa mattina.
- 3 – Invece di andare a New York, perché non andiamo a Sydney?
 – Non credo che si (potere) _____ cambiare la destinazione adesso. Il viaggio è tutto prenotato.
- 4 – Giorgio arriva stasera, vero?
 – Non penso che (arrivare) _____ stasera. Arriverà forse domani.

- 5 – Luisa ha comprato una nuova macchina?
 – Non penso che ne (avere comprata) ____ una. Però la sta cercando.
- 6 – Aldo è andato in Francia questo fine settimana?
 – Non credo che (essere andato) _____. Voleva andare ma ha avuto dei problemi.

Exercise 2

Your holiday villa has a maid – what bliss! Tell her what you want her to do this morning.

Voglio che _____.

- 1 fare i letti
- 2 pulire la cucina
- 3 lavare questi vestiti
- 4 stirare la biancheria lavata ieri
- 5 preparare il pranzo per l'una

Exercise 3

You are shopping for various things. How would you say:

'I'd like ...'?

- 1 a blouse that is easy to iron
- 2 a sweater that can be washed in the machine
- 3 a handbag in which there is space for a book

Exercise 4

You're talking politics with a friend. Explain what you think are the qualities needed in a prime minister: in Italy, **Presidente del Consiglio (dei Ministri)**.

Bisogna che (1 capire) ____ i problemi della gente comune. Nello stesso tempo è necessario che (2 avere) ____ una visione larga del suo lavoro. Ci vuole una persona che (3 sapere) ____ resistere alle pressioni. Naturalmente occorre che (4 essere) ____ molto paziente. Sarà possibile trovare una persona adatta?

Dialogue 2

Alla boutique

Signora Rossi and Angela go to a shop where signora Rossi has often bought clothes for important occasions. She introduces Angela to the owner and explains what Angela is looking for.

1 Why does the owner of the shop ask when the wedding is?

2 Angela likes the first outfit she tries on but there is a small problem.

3 Why is Angela pleased with her shopping expedition?

NEGOZIANTE: Buongiorno signora Smith. Sono sicuro che c'è quello che cerca. In che mese è il matrimonio?

ANGELA: Ai primi di settembre.

NEGOZIANTE: Allora andrebbe bene un vestito di seta. A settembre non farà freddo. Venga a vedere qui. Che misura ha?

ANGELA: 44, penso.

NEGOZIANTE: Ci sono tailleur come questi. C'è anche la camicetta ma naturalmente in un'altra occasione la può sostituire. Oppure potrebbe prendere un vestito con giacca, come questi.

ANGELA: Posso provare questo?

Shortly Angela appears from the changing room wearing the outfit.

SIG.RA R: Che bello! Veramente Le sta molto bene questo colore.

ANGELA: Mi piace molto. E' proprio quello che volevo. Ma non è un po' larga la gonna?

NEGOZIANTE: Sì, ha ragione ma gliela possiamo stringere leggermente. Ma non vuole provare un altro vestito? Guardi questo abito a fiori, lo provi. Può darsi che Le piaccia di più.

ANGELA: No, veramente mi piace molto questo. Se mi potete stringere la gonna senza che si noti, lo prendo.

The purchase concluded, Angela and signora Rossi go for a coffee in a nearby bar.



- SIG.RA R: Il vestito che ha comprato è proprio bello ma come mai non ha voluto provarne ancora uno o due?
- ANGELA: Mi è subito piaciuto quello e così abbiamo risparmiato tempo. Mi ero presa tutta la mattinata libera. Che ne dice, signora Rossi? Andiamo a visitare un museo?
- SIG.RA R: Che bella idea! Ma diamoci del tu. E' più facile.

Vocabulary notes

boutique 'shop'. French word, used to indicate a smart dress shop.

sono sicuro che ... 'I am sure that ...'. Since the shop owner is sure, there is no subjunctive here.

ai primi di settembre 'in the first (few) days of September'

andrebbe bene un vestito di seta 'a silk dress would be very suitable'

tailleur 'suit'. French word: jacket and skirt or coat and dress, for women only.

le sta bene 'it suits you'. **stare bene** and **andare bene** mean the same.

non è un po' larga la gonna? 'isn't the skirt a little big?' (lit. 'wide')

stringere 'to take in' (of clothes). **stringere** means 'to make tight, to squeeze'; **stringere la mano a qualcuno** is 'to shake hands'.

senza che si noti 'without it showing'. **senza che** requires a subjunctive.

abbiamo risparmiato tempo ‘we’ve saved time’

che ne dice? ‘what do you say about it?’ That is, ‘do you like the idea?’.

diamoci del tu ‘let’s use “tu”’. In English: ‘let’s use first names’. When you use ‘tu’ you also use first names.

Using avere + noun

ha ragione ‘you’re right’

You met this in Unit 5 and again in Unit 15. A number of common ideas, which in English are expressed using ‘to be’ and an adjective, in Italian are conveyed by **avere** and a noun:

avere ragione	to be right	avere torto	to be wrong
avere caldo	to be hot	avere freddo	to be cold
avere fame	to be hungry	avere sete	to be thirsty
avere fretta	to be in a hurry	avere bisogno di	to need
avere sonno	to be sleepy	avere 17 anni	to be 17

Ho fame, andiamo a mangiare. C’è un ristorante qui vicino?

I’m hungry, let’s go and eat. Is there a restaurant near here?

Mi scusi, ho fretta. Devo partire con il treno delle undici.

Devo scappare.

Forgive me, I’m in a hurry. I have to catch the eleven o’clock train. I must fly.

Ho bisogno di un nuovo vestito.

I need a new dress/suit.

Vocabulary

Il vestiario

biancheria	underwear	giacca	jacket
(personale)		pantaloni	trousers
impermeabile	raincoat	cappello	hat
camicia	shirt (man’s)	gonna	skirt
camicietta	blouse	calze (sing.)	stockings
golf	cardigan,	calza)	
	knitted jacket	calzini	socks
cappotto	overcoat	collant	tights

tailleur	(women's) suit	vestito	(man's suit), (women's) dress
(di) lana	wool	largo	wide, loose
(di) seta	silk	stretto	narrow, tight
(di) cotone	cotton	corto	short
stare/andare bene a (qualcuno)		to suit (someone)	

Cultural point

As we saw, the influence of Paris, which used to be the fashion capital of the world, is still alive in words such as **tailleur** and **boutique**. However, you will probably know that it is the designers of Milan who now outshine those of Paris in the world of fashion. It is, of course, a sphere where imaginations are more than usually lively in the use of words as well as in design. Foreign words have a particular glamour. Reading the fashion pages you will find writers appear to try to avoid the standard words. It will add to your fun when you read – and you may well find English words being used, which of course sound exotic in Italian!

Exercise 5

We are now at the end of our course. You have studied the main structures of Italian grammar, been introduced to many of the situations you are likely to find yourself in in Italy and met a very large number of words. The second set of dialogues above contained many of the grammar points you have studied. Can you pick out examples of the following:

- 1 The conditional?
- 2 The imperfect?
- 3 The perfect (**passato prossimo**)?
- 4 The future?
- 5 The imperative?
- 6 Personal pronouns, direct and indirect object?
- 7 Combined pronouns?
- 8 Relative pronouns?

And what should you do next, especially if you didn't pick them out correctly? Yes, revise those points. Revision, combined with speaking, reading and hearing as much Italian as you can, will help you gradually to become more and more at ease with the language.

You are now ready to visit Italy and try out your Italian. Be prepared for surprises and disappointments, but also for fun and moments to treasure.

Readings

I borghi d.o.c.

And in readiness for that visit, here is information on three of the borghi d.o.c. (see Unit 15), which you may want to put on your itinerary.

- 1 Why might you not be surprised to meet people dressed in thirteenth-century costume in Apricale?**
- 2 Why can't cars go into Apricale?**

Apricale: Le auto? Non ci passano

Se passeggiando per le strade di Apricale incontraste persone vestite come nel '200, forse non ci fareste caso. Raccolto intorno



Apricale. From the town's website www.apricale.org.
Courtesy the Mayor of Apricale.

alla piazzetta centrale, questo borgo tutto di pietra nella provincia di Imperia è situato su quella che era la via dell'olio, a 13 chilometri dal mare. E sulle strade lastricate, quasi delle mulattiere, . . . dovevano trovarsi a loro agio gli asinelli di un tempo, con le loro giare ricolme di olio. Non certo le auto . . . Le mura medievali, l'arco acuto e il castello con il giardino pensile sono ancora perfettamente conservati e, tra i muri, molti artisti hanno trovato lo spazio per bellissimi affreschi . . .

(Adapted from an article in *Vera* magazine, March 2003, by kind permission of the publishers)

Vocabulary notes

giare (f. pl.) 'jars'. These are usually terracotta and are used as containers and as measures of quantity for oil.

giardino pensile 'hanging garden'. This would usually be supported by arches and typically would be overlooking a valley.

le mura, i muri **muro** 'wall' has a plural **muri** for most meanings of the word. **Le mura** means the fortifications of a town, i.e. a set of walls designed for defensive purposes.

Dozza: come una galleria d'arte

1 What is the curious national competition that takes place in Dozza?

Sono quasi cento i muri dipinti di questo borgo dell'Emilia Romagna, trasformato in una vera e propria galleria d'arte all'aperto. . . . Il borgo fortificato, con le case addossate le une alle altre, termina nel punto più elevato con la Rocca di Caterina. Le vie di Dozza . . . sono teatro del curioso concorso Nazionale del Muro Dipinto. Il risultato sono opere d'arte che hanno dato un nuovo volto al paese, integrandosi perfettamente con l'atmosfera soave del borgo.

Vocabulary notes

le case addossate le une alle altre 'the houses built back to back with each other'

rocca (see **castello**) 'fortress, castle'

un nuovo volto 'a new face'

Note: In its cellars, the **Rocca** houses the **Enoteca Regionale**, the regional wine museum/showroom.

Castel di Tora: sul lago di Turano (Lazio)

- 1 **Why are there many archeological remains in the area of Castel di Tora?**
- 2 **Antuni is another small town – what picture do you get of it.**
- 3 **And of the area separating it from a third, Collalto Sabino.**

“... un presepe che galleggia sulle acque del lago di Turano”. Con questa immagine evocativa l’opuscolo dell’Anci presenta Castel di Tora, grazioso borgo a un’ora di distanza da Roma. Il paese fu fondato sulle rovine dell’antica città romana di Thiora, in una zona ancora ricca di testimonianze archeologiche. Da vedere sono la Fontana del Tritone, la cinta muraria e la torre del Castello del ’200. Poco distante dal centro, su una penisola che si protende a picco nelle acque del lago, da non perdere il caratteristico borgo di Antuni ... Solo 14 ... sono i chilometri che separano Castel di Tora da Collalto Sabino. Altro borgo del club, che tra castelli diroccati e rifugi dei briganti domina l’intera vallata.

Vocabulary notes

un presepe ‘a crib’. The writer is probably thinking of the crib in the sense of model of the stable where Christ was born.

cinta muraria ‘the circle of walls, fortifications’

da non perdere ‘not to be missed’

a picco ‘with a sharp drop below’

castelli diroccati ‘crumbling castles’

rifugi dei briganti ‘the brigands’ hideouts’. A feature of life particularly in southern Italy in the nineteenth century; **un rifugio** is a shelter.

These three extracts are taken from the article ‘Per le vie dei borghi d.o.c.’ in *Vera* magazine, March 2003, also used in Unit 15.

To find out more, visit the website www.borghitalia.it where you can find out about these little towns, region by region, and the aims etc. of the club that promotes them.

Buon viaggio e buona fortuna!

Grammar summary

When grammar points are dealt with in a single unit, the reader is referred to that unit. This section contains summaries of points that are scattered over two or more units.

Nouns and articles

<i>Definite article</i>	<i>Indefinite article</i>	<i>Noun</i>	<i>Definite article</i>	<i>Noun</i>
<i>Masculine singular</i>			<i>Masculine plural</i>	
il	un	{ vino padre	i	{ vini padri
l'	un	{ albergo ambiente	gli	{ alberghi ambienti
lo	uno	{ spuntino zio studente	gli	{ spuntini zii studenti
<i>Feminine singular</i>			<i>Feminine plural</i>	
la	una	{ casa madre stella	le	{ case madri stelle
l'	un'	{ azienda estate	le	{ aziende estati

Note: The indefinite article does not have a plural. The partitive article would convey the idea with a plural noun ('some') and can also be used with a single non-count noun, e.g. **pane** 'bread'. The form is **di** + definite article, see 'Prepositions with the definite article' below (p. 261).

Adjectives

In Italian, adjectives must *agree with* (match) the noun they describe in gender (m. or f.) and number (sing. or pl.). There are two main types: (1) those with a masculine singular ending in **-o**; and (2) those with a singular ending (both m. and f.) in **-e**.

	<i>Masculine</i>		<i>Feminine</i>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Type 1	rosso	rossi	rossa	rosse
Type 2	verde	verdi	verde	verdi

Adverbs

See Unit 8.

Prepositions with the definite article

See Unit 6. Some common short prepositions combine with the definite article. Here is the complete table.

	<i>a</i>	<i>di</i>	<i>da</i>	<i>su</i>	<i>in</i>	
il	al	del	dal	sul	nel	libro
l' (m. and f.)	all'	dell'	dall'	sull'	nell'	{ albergo azienda
lo	allo	dello	dallo	sullo	nello	studio
la	alla	della	dalla	sulla	nella	casa
i	ai	dei	dai	sui	nei	negozi
gli	agli	degli	dagli	sugli	negli	{ alberghi studi
le	alle	delle	dalle	sulle	nelle	{ case aziende

In older Italian, **con** and **per** were combined with the definite article, giving **col** and **pel** etc. This is unusual today, although in speaking **con** is combined with the definite article by some

speakers. Learners need not worry about this. In the case of **al, del** etc. where there is a double consonant in the spelling it is because a double consonant is pronounced.

Pronouns

This is a summary of the information on personal pronouns given in Units 1, 5, 6, 8 and 9.

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Direct object (unstressed)</i>	<i>Indirect object (unstressed)</i>	<i>Reflexive</i>	<i>Stressed</i>
io I	mi me	mi to me	mi (to) myself	me me
tu you	ti you	ti to you	ti (to) yourself	te you
lui he	lo him	gli to him	si (to) himself	lui him
lei she	la her	le to her	si (to) herself	lei her
Lei* you	La* you	Le* to you	Si* (to) yourself	Lei* you
noi we	ci us	ci to us	ci (to) ourselves	noi us
voi you	vi you	vi to you	vi (to) yourselves	voi you
loro they (m.)	li them	gli to them	si (to) themselves	loro them
loro they (f.)	le them	gli to them	si (to) themselves	loro them

* formal form

Note: There exist the subject forms **egli/ella** 'he/she'; and also **esso/essa** 'it' and **essi/esse** 'they/them', which are usually used when referring to objects or concepts (not people). All belong to formal writing rather than speech.

Stressed or strong pronouns

me, te, lui, lei, Lei (formal 'you'), **noi, voi, loro** are used:

1 After a preposition:

Sta parlando di te.

He's talking about you.

Venite con me.

Come with me.

- 2 For emphasis:

Ama me, non te.

He loves me, not you.

Negatives

This is a summary of the information given in Units 3, 13, 14 and 15.

- 1 Simple negative,
- non**
- placed before the verb:

Non sono italiano.

I am not Italian.

- 2 Stronger negative:

non ... mica**non ... affatto****non ... per niente****non ... per nulla**

- 3 Other negative expressions:

non ... ancora**non ... mai****non ... niente****non ... nulla****non ... nessuno****non ... più****non ... nemmeno****non ... neanche****non ... neppure****nè ... nè**

not yet

never, not ever

nothing, not anything

no one, not ... anyone

no longer, not any more

not even

neither ... nor, not ...

either ... or

There must be a negative word before the verb. Most of the expressions in (3) above may be placed at the beginning of the sentence, in which case the **non** is not necessary:

Nessuno sa dov'è andato.

No one knows where he has gone.

With a compound tense, **niente**, **nulla**, **nessuno** and **nè ... nè** come after the past participle:

Non ho capito niente.

I didn't understand anything.

Non ho visto nessuno.

I didn't see anyone.

Non ha detto nè sì nè no.

He didn't say yes or no.

But:

Non ha mai lavorato tanto.

He has never worked so much.

Non ha ancora deciso.

He hasn't made his mind up yet.

Non ha nemmeno finito di mangiare.

He hasn't even finished eating.

Most of the negatives can be used without a verb or can stand alone:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|
| – Ti piace? | – Affatto. |
| – Do you like it (him)? | – Not at all. |
| – Chi hai visto? | – Nessuno. |
| – Who did you see? | – No one. |
| – Hai visto Gianni e Paolo? | |
| – Did you see Gianni and Paolo? | |
| – Nè l'uno nè l'altro. | |
| – Neither the one nor the other. | |

Interrogatives

These are words (pronouns or adjectives) for asking questions:

Che,¹ che cosa, cosa?	What?
Quale (+ vowel: qual with no apostrophe)/ quali?	Which?
Chi?	Who?
Come? ¹	How?
Come mai	Why (but introduces a note of surprise into the question)
Dove?	Where?

Quando?	When?
Quanto? ¹	How much?
Perché? ²	Why?

Note:

1 **come**, **quanto**, (plus verb) and **che** (plus noun or adjective), can also be used as exclamatives:

Come sei elegante!	How smart you are!
Quanto sei elegante!	How smart you are!
Che bello!	How lovely!
Che paura!	What a fright!
Che fortuna!	What luck!

2 **perché** also means 'because'.

Relative pronouns

- **che** 'who, whom, which' can refer to a person or an object and can be the subject or the object of the clause it introduces. See Unit 4 for a detailed treatment.
- **cui**, not **che**, is used after a preposition:

La signora con cui ho parlato è stata molto gentile.

The lady who I talked with was very nice.

- **il cui**, **la cui**, **i cui**, **le cui** all mean 'whose'; the article must be the one that would go with the object possessed:

Il signor Rossi, la cui figlia vuole studiare negli Stati Uniti . . .

Mr Rossi, whose daughter wants to study in the United States . . .

L'autore, i cui libri hanno un enorme successo, ha accettato il nostro invito.

The author whose books are having a great success has accepted our invitation.

- **il quale**, **la quale**, **i quali**, **le quali** – 'who, which' can replace **che** or **cui** and are especially useful to avoid ambiguity:

La figlia di mio cugino, la quale lavora in Francia, . . .

My cousin's daughter, who works in France, . . .

la quale makes it clear that it is the daughter, not the cousin, who works in France.

- **chi** ‘he who, some . . . others’ is used in proverbs and sayings and sentences such as those below:

Chi va piano, va sano e va lontano.

He who goes slowly, goes safely and a long way.

C'è chi pensa che . . .

There are those who think . . .

Erano molto allegri: chi cantava, chi ballava, chi rideva . . .

They were very happy: some were singing, some dancing, some laughing . . .

- **ciò che, quello che** ‘what’ refers to ideas, rather than specific nouns:

So quello che bisogna fare.

I know what it is necessary to do.

Dimmi ciò che pensi.

Tell me what you think.

- **tutto ciò che, tutto quello che** mean ‘everything that/which’:

So tutto ciò che è successo.

I know everything that happened.

Possessives

These (‘my, your’ etc.) are dealt with fully in Unit 10.

Demonstratives

- **questo** ‘this, this one’ has regular forms in **-o, -a, -i, -e**. See Unit 5.
- **quello** ‘that, that one’ has a regular form when it is a pronoun. When used as an adjective before the noun, its endings are those of the definite article: **quel, quell’, quello, quei, quegli, quella, quelle**. See Unit 5.
- **ciò** means ‘that’. It refers to ideas or phrases, not specific people or objects. It is mostly used with **che** as a relative pronoun:

Trovo interessante ciò che dice.

I find what (that which) he says interesting.

But it will be found without **che**:

Ciò vuol dire che non hai capito.

That means you haven't understood.

Indefinites

Reference list of indefinite adjectives (adj.) and pronouns (pr.):

uno (pr.) one, someone (used in the same way as impersonal **si**)

qualcuno (pr.) someone;

ogni (a.) every, each (+ sing.)

tutti i .../tutte le ... (adj.) every, each, all (+ pl.)

tutti/e (pr.) everyone (used without a noun and followed by plural verb)

tutti e due/tutte e due (pr.) both (*Note: Used as an adjective the article is needed: **Tutte e due le sorelle** 'Both sisters'*)

ognuno (pr.) each person, everyone (sing. only)

ciascuno/a (pr.), **ciascun/a** (adj.) each, each one (sing. only)

qualcosa, qualche cosa (pr.) something

qualche (adj.) some (+ sing. noun) (refers to a few, not a large number)

alcuni/e (adj. and pr.) some (pl.)¹

alcun/a (adj. sing.) can be used with **non** to form a negative: **Non ho alcun'idea** 'I don't have any idea'

altro/a/i/e (adj. and pr.) other, another²

qualsiasi, qualunque (adj.) any, whatever

chiunque (pr.) anyone (it doesn't matter who)

molto, molti/e (pr.); **molto/a/i/e** (adj.) much, many

poco, pochi (pr.); **poco/a/hi/he** (adj.) few, little

un poco, un po' a little (a bit)

troppo (adj. and pr.) too much

tanto (adj. and pr.) so much

parecchio (adj. and pr.) some, several, a good many, a good deal
tale/i (adj.) such

un tale (pr.) is used to convey 'someone or other'

certe persone some (people)

Note:

- 1 The partitive, **del**, also conveys 'some' but the amount is more open; **qualche** and **alcuni** mean 'a few'.
- 2 (a) **Ho comprato altri due libri** 'I bought two other/more books' (**altri tre**, **altri quattro** etc.); (b) **Certe persone pensano questo, altri no** 'Some people think this, others not'; **Ecco i pomodori. Altro?** 'Here are the tomatoes. Anything else?'

(See also the section on 'Negatives', p. 263.)

Verbs

Non-finite moods

See Unit 15.

The infinitive

Present

There are three main types, ending in (1) **-are**, (2) **-ere** or (3) **-ire**. For reflexive verbs the reflexive pronoun is attached to the infinitive: **divertirsi** 'to enjoy oneself'. In a sentence the reflexive pronoun must be the appropriate one for the subject of the verb preceding the infinitive:

Vogliamo divertirci.

We want to enjoy *ourselves*.

Note: (a) In group (2), some of the infinitives have the stress on the **e** of **-ere**, while others have the stress on the preceding syllable, e.g. **temere** but **vendere**. The verbs do not differ in form or stress at any other point of the conjugation. (b) Some verbs have infinitives that have become contracted over the centuries, e.g. **bere**, **produrre**, **porre**. In some tenses they function from the older infinitive, e.g. **bevere**, **produrre**, **ponere**.

Past or perfect infinitive

Formed using **avere** or **essere**, according to which of these the verb is conjugated with (see ‘Compound tenses’, p. 273), and the past participle (see p. 125 and below).

avere mangiato	to have eaten
essere arrivato	to have arrived

Note: With reflexive verbs the appropriate reflexive pronoun is attached to the infinitive:

Sono contento di essermi divertito.
I am happy to have enjoyed myself.

The gerund

See Unit 11.

The past participle

See Unit 8.

Common *irregular* forms are:

-ere verbs

chiudere	chiuso	spendere	speso
decidere	deciso	prendere	preso
includere	incluso	uccidere	ucciso
rimanere	rimasto	scrivere	scritto
leggere	letto	chiedere	chiesto
vedere	visto or veduto	rispondere	risposto
perdere	perso or perduto	mettere	messo
nascere	nato		

-ire verbs

aprire	aperto	coprire	coperto
offrire	offerto		

Irregular verbs

essere	stato	venire	venuto
fare	fatto	dire	detto

stare	stato	morire	morto
dare	dato		

Note: These have a *regular* past participle:

avere	avuto	potere	potuto
volere	voluto	dovere	dovuto
andare	andato	uscire	uscito
sapere	saputo		

Finite moods

See Unit 15.

The indicative – simple tenses

Present

This is a summary of information given in Units 1 to 5.

Regular verbs

Note: Verbs in **-ire** divide into: (1) those that have an extra syllable, **-isc-**, in some parts of the present tense; and (2) those that form their present tense exactly like verbs in the **-ere** group.

<i>-are</i>	<i>-ere</i>	<i>-ire (1)</i>	<i>-ire (2)</i>
parlo	vendo	capisco	parto
parli	vendi	capisci	parti
parla	vende	capisce	parte
parliamo	vendiamo	capiamo	partiamo
parlate	vendete	capite	partite
parlano	vendono	capiscono	partono

In the third person plural of all these verbs the stress falls on the antepenultimate syllable.

Spelling

(1) Verbs ending in **-care**, **-gare**, **-ciare**, **-giare**, **-sciare**. The sound does not change and the spelling is adapted to show this. The first two types (**-care**, **-gare**) insert an **h** before an **i** in the ending;

the others (**-ciare, -giare, -sciare**) omit the **i** of the stem before **i** or **e**. This is also true in other tenses.

cerco, cerchi, cerca, cerchiamo, cercate, cercano

pago, paghi, paga, paghiamo, pagate, pagano

comincio, cominci, comincia, cominciamo, cominciate, cominciano

mangio, mangi, mangia, mangiamo, mangiate, mangiano

lascio, lasci, lascia, lasciamo, lasciate, lasciano

(2) Verbs ending in **-cere, -ggere**. With verbs in the **-ere** group the opposite happens – the spelling does not change because the sound does:

vincere: vinco, vinci, vince, vinciamo, vincete, vincono

leggere: leggo, leggi, legge, leggiamo, leggete, leggono

Imperfect

For a table of regular forms see Unit 13. A few verbs are irregular and they are fully dealt with in Unit 13.

Future

For a table of regular forms see Unit 16. The following verbs are *irregular* in the future tense:

(a) **essere: sarò, sarai, sarà, saremo, sarete, saranno**

(b) verbs that lose the vowel of their infinitive: the endings follow the regular pattern:

andare: andrò, andrai, andrà, andremo, andrete, andranno

avere: avrò; dovere: dovrò; sapere: saprò

vedere: vedrò; vivere: vivrò

(c) verbs that lose the vowel and also have the final vowel of the stem of the infinitive changed to become the same as the second, giving **-rr-**:

rimanere: rimarrò

venire: verrò

volere: vorrò

(d) **bere: berrò**

(e) *dare*: **darò**; *fare*: **farò**; *stare*: **starò**

The first and third person singular are stressed on the final vowel, which is written with an accent to indicate this.

Past definite

This tense has not been presented in the text, but its use is explained briefly in Unit 13.

parlai	vendei (etti)	capii
parlasti	vendesti	capisti
parlò	vendè (ette)	capì
parlammo	vendemmo	capimmo
parlaste	vendeste	capiste
parlarono	venderono (ettero)	capirono

Note:

(a) The stress falls on the penultimate syllable except in the third person singular, where the accented vowel is stressed, and the third person plural where the stress falls on the antepenultimate syllable.

(b) In the **-ere** group of verbs, as well as in some irregular verbs, there are alternative forms for the first and third person singular and third person plural. (These forms are given in brackets.) Many verbs in this group are irregular in this tense. They are irregular in the first and third person singular and the third person plural, but regular in the other parts. Therefore if you know the first and second person singular you can form the remaining parts. **bere**, **dire**, **fare** form the **passato remoto** from their older infinitives. Below are some examples:

avere:	ebbi, avesti, ebbe, avemmo, aveste, ebbero
dire:	dissi, dicesti, disse, dicemmo, diceste, dissero
fare:	feci, facesti, fece, facemmo, faceste, fecero
vedere:	vidi, vedesti, vide, vedemmo, vedeste, videro

Given the first and second person the others may be formed on these models.

bere:	bevvi (bevetti), bevesti
chiedere:	chiesi, chiedesti
chiudere:	chiusi, chiudesti
conoscere:	conobbi, conoscesti
decidere:	decisi, decidesti

<i>leggere:</i>	lessi, leggesti
<i>mettere:</i>	misi, mettesti
<i>nascere:</i>	nacqui, nascesti
<i>prendere:</i>	presi, prendesti
<i>rimanere:</i>	rimasi, rimanesti
<i>rispondere:</i>	risposi, rispondesti
<i>sapere:</i>	seppi, sapesti
<i>scendere:</i>	scesi, scendesti
<i>uccidere:</i>	uccisi, uccidesti

Also irregular are:

<i>essere:</i>	fui, fosti, fu, fummo, foste, furono
<i>dare:</i>	diedi (detti), desti
<i>venire:</i>	venni, venisti
<i>volere:</i>	volli, volesti
<i>stare:</i>	stetti, stesti
<i>vivere:</i>	vissi, vivesti

The indicative – compound tenses

Present perfect

See also Units 10, 11, 15 and 16. This is formed with the present tense of **avere** or **essere** and the past participle.

(A) Verbs conjugated with **essere** include:

- 1 verbs of motion: **andare, venire, arrivare, partire, entrare, uscire, salire, scendere, tornare, passare da**;
- 2 verbs indicating a change of state: **ingrassare, dimagrire, diventare, divenire, aumentare, diminuire, migliorare**;
- 3 **essere, stare, nascere, morire, piacere**;
- 4 verbs used reflexively;
- 5 verbs used impersonally, e.g. **è sembrato** ‘it seemed’;
- 6 verbs relating to weather conditions can be conjugated with **essere**, but they will also be found with **avere**: **è nevicato** and **ha nevicato**.

The past participle must agree with the subject:

sono andato/a	siamo andati/e
sei andato/a	siete andati/e
è andato/a	sono andati/e

mi sono divertito/a
ti sei divertito/a
si è divertito/a

ci siamo divertiti/e
vi siete divertiti/e
si sono divertiti/e

(B) All other verbs are conjugated with **avere**:

ho finito
hai finito
ha finito

abbiamo finito
avete finito
hanno finito

The past participle does not agree with the subject. If there is a direct object pronoun preceding the verb, it agrees with that: **I biscotti? Li ho finiti.**

Other compound tenses can be formed with **essere** or **avere** according to the verb.

Pluperfect

The imperfect of **avere** or **essere** plus the past participle:

avevo finito
ero andato/a

I had finished
 I had gone

Future perfect

The future of **avere** or **essere** plus the past participle:

avrò finito
sarò andato/a

I shall have finished
 I shall have gone

The conditional

See Unit 15.

Conditional perfect

The conditional perfect is formed with the conditional of **avere** or **essere** and the past participle (see Notes).

avrei parlato
sarei andato/a

I would have spoken
 I would have gone, etc.

The imperative

This is a summary of the information given in Unit 6. There is no first person singular for the imperative; and the third person plural is rarely used since the formal plural, **loro**, is rarely used. The plural

'you' is normally **voi**. As in the present indicative, the **-ire** group subdivides. An example of each type is given.

parla	vendi	capisci	parti
parli	venda	capisca	parta
parliamo	vendiamo	capiamo	partiamo
parlate	vendete	capite	partite
parlino	vendano	capiscano	partano

The stress is regular except that in the third person plural form it falls on the antepenultimate syllable.

The subjunctive

- 1 *Present*: see Unit 17.
- 2 *Perfect subjunctive*: this is formed using the present subjunctive of **avere** or **essere** and the past participle:

abbia parlato **sia andato/a**

- 3 *Imperfect*: see Unit 15.
- 4 *Pluperfect*: this is formed with the imperfect subjunctive of **avere** or **essere** and the past participle:

avessi parlato **fossi andato/a**

The passive

All the verbs above are *active*. Those that can take a direct object can be made passive using **essere** and the past participle, or sometimes **venire** or **andare** and the past participle (see Units 8 and 9).

Present:	Il lavoro è fatto a mano. The work is done by hand.
Perfect:	Il lavoro è stato fatto a mano. The work has been/was done by hand.
Imperfect:	Il lavoro era fatto a mano. The work was being done/used to be done by hand.
Future:	Il lavoro sarà fatto a mano. The work will be done by hand.
Future perfect:	Il lavoro sarà stato fatto a mano. The work will have been done by hand.

Conditional:	Il lavoro sarebbe fatto a mano. The work would be done by hand.
Conditional perfect:	Il lavoro sarebbe stato fatto a mano. The work would have been done by hand.
Present subjunctive:	Occorre che il lavoro sia fatto a mano. The work must be done by hand.
Imperfect subjunctive:	Voleva che il lavoro fosse fatto a mano. He wanted the work to be done by hand.

Verbs and other expressions followed by an infinitive

To express certain ideas, we frequently need to use a verb, an adjective, or a noun followed by a verb. In this case this following verb is in the infinitive. The precise structure necessary will depend on the first word.

- No preposition is required after **dovere, potere, volere, lasciare, piacere, preferire, sapere, vedere; basta, bisogna, facile, difficile, possibile, impossibile, necessario; bene, meglio**. For example:

Mi piace ballare.
I like dancing/to dance.

Basta telefonare.
All you need to do is telephone.
(lit. 'It is enough to telephone')

E' difficile sapere che cosa fare.
It's difficult to know what to do.

- The preposition **a** is required after a number of verbs, including **andare, abituarsi, cominciare, imparare, provare, venire**; and after certain adjectives including **abituato, pronto**. For example:

Vado a sciare domenica.
I am going skiing on Sunday.

Comincia a piovere.
It's beginning to rain.

Sei pronto a fare il bagno?
Are you ready to bathe/have a bath?

- The preposition **di** is required after many verbs, including **credere, decidere, dimenticare, ricordarsi**; after adjectives such as **contento, felice**; and after nouns, where it is usually used with **avere**, e.g. **avere paura di, avere bisogno di**. For example:

Credo di farcela.

I believe I can manage it.

Ha deciso di partire domani.

He has decided to leave tomorrow.

Sono contento di sapere che stai meglio.

I am pleased to know you are better.

Ho paura di fare un errore.

I am afraid of making a mistake.

Students are advised to consult a good dictionary when in doubt.

Key to exercises

Unit 1

Al bar

Aranciata – this is a fizzy orange drink; Coca-Cola.

Prima colazione

1 Maria has a bun; Piera has a pastry. 2 Maria drinks a white coffee, Piera black.

Exercise 1

un vino rosso, **un** gelato, **una** birra, **un** caffè, **un'** acqua minerale, **una** spremuta, **un** succo di frutta, **un** tè, **un** vino bianco, **un'** aranciata

Exercise 2

1 un cappuccino 2 un'aranciata 3 una spremuta di arancia 4 una birra

Exercise 3

(1) 7, (2) 9, (3) 400, (4) 803, (5) 2.500, (6) 1.300, (7) 10.000, (8) 6.100 (9) 55, (10) 79

Exercise 4

1 Tre euro settantun centesimi 2 Due euro dieci centesimi 3 Venti euro 4 Trenta euro 5 Un euro sessanta centesimi; each coffee: ottanta centesimi 6 Dieci euro cinquantotto centesimi

Un appuntamento con il signor Rossi

1 To wait a moment and to sit down 2 S'accomodi

Un incontro per la strada

Because the teacher has to go, presumably he's hurrying somewhere.

Exercise 5

Avv. Bruni: Buongiorno, signor Rossi, come va? Sig. Rossi: Bene grazie. E Lei? Avv. Bruni. Bene. Devo andare. ArrivederLa. Sig. Rossi: ArrivederLa (Buongiorno).

Exercise 6

In **Al bar**: 1 Prego. lit. I beg, request. 2 Va bene. lit. It goes well. It's fine, OK. In **Prima colazione**: 3 Desidera? lit. You desire? i.e. What would you like? In **Un appuntamento con il signor Rossi**: 4 Sono Angela Smith. I am Angela Smith. 5 Come va? How are you? In **Un incontro per la strada**: 6 Ha un raffreddore. He has a cold. 7 Mi dispiace. lit. it is displeasing to me. I'm sorry. 8 Sta bene. He's well. 9 Lavora molto. He's working a lot. 10 Devo andare. I have to go.

Bar famosi

1 In 1720. 2 Sparkling white wine and peach juice. 3 Yes. The food is very good, but the bill would be substantial. 4 Arrigo Cipriani.

Exercise 7

You should find it easy to make the list and the unit gives you help with all the meanings.

Unit 2

Sono americano, e lei?

1 In Boston. 2 In Rome. 3 His mother is Italian, from Siracusa in Sicily. 4 His brother lives in Los Angeles and he finds the US friendly and interesting. 5 Yes. He likes Bologna: it is friendly and interesting.

Exercise 1

1 Sean Connery è scozzese (britannico) 2 Michael Schumacher è tedesco 3 Kofi Annan è ghanese 4 Tiger Woods è americano 5 Arnold Schwarzenegger è austriaco 6 Meryl Streep è americana 7 Roma è una città italiana 8 New York è una città americana 9 Rio de Janeiro è una città brasiliana 10 Toronto è una città canadese 11 Sydney è una città australiana 12 Tokio è una città giapponese

Exercise 2

Chiara studia. Lucia canta. Paolo fuma. Luigi balla. Anna telefona. Marco lavora.

If you were doing them you would say: 1 Canto 2 Fumo 3 Lavoro 4 Telefono 5 Ballo 6 Studio

Exercise 3

1 Mi chiamo Charlie Hardcastle. 2 Sono sudafricano. 3 Abito a Johannesburg. 4 Parlo inglese e francese. 5 Mia madre è francese, di Bordeaux. 6 Bordeaux è una città simpatica.

Exercise 4

1 Mi piace lavorare 2 Mi piace New York 3 Mi piace cantare 4 Mi piace Roma 5 Mi piace parlare italiano 6 Mi piace Luciano Pavarotti

Exercise 5

1 Devo telefonare 2 Devo lavorare 3 Devo venire 4 Devo studiare

Mi chiamo Paolo Bianchi

1 His name is Paolo Bianchi. 2 From Milan. 3 In Milan. 4 In a hospital in Milan. 5 He is tall and fair-haired. 6 Yes. 7 He likes playing tennis and he also likes classical music.

Exercise 6

1 sono 2 sono 3 abito (or lavoro) 4 lavoro 5 sono

Exercise 7

Mi chiamo Giorgio. Abito a Napoli. Mia madre abita a Roma con mio fratello. Sono medico in un ospedale a Napoli. Mi piace il mio lavoro. Sono sportivo e mi piace giocare a golf e a tennis. Mi scusi, devo scappare. Mi dispiace. Arrivederci.

Mi chiamo Luisa Lucchini

1 History and geography. 2 Yes, she likes tennis and golf. 3 Because it is a big, lively city, interesting and stimulating. *You may also have said:* She likes opera and in Milan there is La Scala opera house.

Exercise 8

Possible combinations are: una birra: bionda, australiana; una signora, una madre, una signorina: romana, bionda, australiana, vivace, interessante; un signore, un marito, un fratello, un professore: alto, simpatico, interessante, americano, sportivo, vivace, sposato; un vino: bianco, americano, vivace, interessante, simpatico; un lavoro, un paese: interessante, simpatico; una città: interessante, australiana.

Suo marito, come si chiama?

1 He is a good pianist. 2 No, he is Scottish. 3 He works in a bank. (He is an accountant or financial adviser.) 4 No. He's mad about do-it-yourself. 5 In Toronto, Canada, presumably, since that is where Bill works.

Exercise 9

1 Sono australiana. Sono alta e bionda. Sono sposata. Lavoro a Sydney. 2 Sono canadese. Sono sposato. Mia moglie è inglese. Abito a Milano. 3 Sono italiano, sono siciliano, di Palermo. Mi chiamo Salvatore. Abito a Bologna. Lavoro in una banca. Sono sposato e mia moglie è scozzese. E' insegnante. 4 E' australiana, alta e bionda, sposata e lavora a Sydney. 5 E' canadese. E' sposato. Sua moglie è inglese. Abita a Milano. 6 E' italiano, siciliano, di Palermo. Si chiama Salvatore. Abita a Bologna e lavora in una banca. E' sposato e sua moglie è scozzese. Lei è insegnante.

Unit 3

A Perugia

1 It's the town hall 2 Along Corso Vannucci, the main street 3 To see the view over the valley towards Assisi

Exercise 1

You should have found the following. In Dialogue 1: Lei è americano? E Lei? Lei è in Italia per lavoro? E lei? E' a Bologna per lavoro? In Dialogue 2: E suo marito, come si chiama? Che lavoro fa? (twice) E come passa il suo tempo libero? E' sportivo, ama lo sport?

Exercise 2

1 il 2 il 3 la 4 la 5 il

C'è una banca qui vicino?

1 He asks whether there is a bank nearby 2 Because he thinks the bank is shut at that time

Exercise 3

1 C'è un ristorante qui vicino? 2 C'è una farmacia qui vicino?
3 C'è un albergo qui vicino? 4 C'è una fermata dell'autobus qui vicino? 5 C'è un supermercato qui vicino?

Scusi, dov'è il consolato americano?

The passer-by doesn't know where it is and suggests the tourist asks at the town tourist office.

Exercise 4

1 V (vero), 2 V, 3 F (falso), 4 F, 5 V. Only you can answer 6 to 12.

Exercise 5

1 No, non lavoro qui 2 No, non abito in questa città 3 No, non sono qui in vacanza 4 No, non sono americano/a 5 No, non parlo francese

Exercise 6

1 La Mole Antonelliana (the symbol of the city of Turin, in the way the Leaning Tower is for Pisa). 2 Piazza San Carlo (a lovely square). 3 Il Duomo (where the Turin Shroud is kept).

Exercise 7

Open

Exercise 8

1 vedo 2 Dipende 3 chiedere; abito 4 Prenda 5 Chiedo 6 abita 7 piace 8 chiama 9 lavora 10 vedi; prendi

A Roma

1 It used to be the residence of the Venetian ambassadors. (Venice was an independent republic until 1797. Rome was, until 1870, the capital of a state whose head was the Pope.) 2 Because it is a monument to the first king of the united Italy, Victor Emmanuel II, who was the figurehead and rallying point of the movement for unification. 3 It was the religious centre. 4 Because it runs through the area of the imperial forums/fora. 5 Between Piazza Venezia and Piazza del Popolo.

Unit 4**Devo andare a Torino**

1 Relatively slow, taking over 2 hours for the journey 2 Faster, taking only an hour 20 minutes 3 30 euro by Eurostar, second class, return 4 40 euro

Exercise 1

1 diciotto 2 diciassette 3 dodici 4 diciannove 5 sedici

Exercise 2

1 milleduecentoquindici 2 millequattrocentonovantadue 3 mille-settecentoottantanove 4 milleottocentoquindici 5 milleottocento-quarantotto 6 millenovecentodiciotto 7 millenovecentoquarantasei 8 duemilacinque

Exercise 3

1 Sono le quattro e un quarto 2 Sono le due e mezzo 3 E' mezzogiorno meno cinque (or you may have thought it was nearly midnight: E' mezzanotte meno cinque) 4 Sono le tre e dieci 5 Sono le due meno un quarto

Exercise 4

Open

Exercise 5

1 e, 2 f, 3 d, 4 c, 5 a, 6 g, 7 b, 8 h

You would say: 1 Ballo ... 2 Visito ... 3 Prendo ... 4 Guardo ... 5 Leggo ... 6 Scrivo ... 7 Parto ...

Exercise 6

1 E' 2 Abita 3 lavora 4 deve 5 parte 6 arriva 7 torna 8 finisce 9 dorme 10 preferisce 11 decide (lui)

Vorrei andare in Piazza Castello

1 No. 2 She has to get off behind the cathedral. She then has to take a little street which will take her into Piazza Castello. 3 The 15.

Come si fa a prendere l'autobus?

1 From a tobacconist, a newsagent, in a bar, or wherever there is a sign saying tickets are sold there. (Sometimes there is a ticket machine at the bus stop.) 2 In cities, generally one pays the same price for all journeys regardless of distance. 3 Because you are in touch with people and you avoid parking problems.

L'aeroporto

1 Because English is much used in airports (and in the air). 2 When the flight is going to an English-speaking country.

Unit 5**Vorrei una guida**

1 A small, pocket one. 2 No. The shop has only one sort at the moment.

Exercise 1

1 F (falso), 2 V (vero), 3 V, 4 F, 5 F

Exercise 2

Alberto is a very polite (well brought up) boy. At the moment he is at high school. He is a very good student. He likes reading and often goes to bookshops to look at and buy books.

Exercise 3

1 b, 2 d, 3 a, 4 e, 5 c

Exercise 4

1 Vorrei andare a Roma. 2 Mi dispiace, non posso andare a Roma. 3 Potrei vedere il libro? 4 Puoi (formal può) giocare a tennis domani? Mi dispiace, non posso. Devo andare a Milano. 5 Non voglio partire domani. 6 Si può partire per Roma stasera? Mi dispiace, non si può. 7 Vorrei una birra. 8 Si può pagare con la carta di credito? 9 Si può vedere l'Etna da qui?

Cinque cartoline per favore

1 Ten, five small and five large 2 The USA

Exercise 5

1 No, tre caffè. 2 ... quattro aranciate. 3 ... cinque birre. 4 ... sei acque minerali. 5 ... sette spremute di arancia. 6 ... otto cappuccini.

Exercise 6

1 L'albergo 2 La città 3 I ragazzi 4 Le cartoline 5 I francobolli 6 Lo studente 7 Gli uffici 8 Il monumento 9 Gli scontrini 10 Le città

Exercise 7

1 Quell'albergo 2 Quella città 3 Quei ragazzi 4 Quelle cartoline 5 Quei francobolli 6 Quello studente 7 Quegli uffici 8 Quel monumento 9 Quegli scontrini 10 Quelle città

Exercise 8

1 Preferiamo 2 Arriviamo 3 Comprano 4 Capite 5 Partono 6 Prendono

Exercise 9

- (a) 1 andiamo 2 guardiamo 3 leggiamo 4 invitiamo 5 vogliamo
 (b) 1 lavorano 2 cominciano 3 tornano 4 mangiano 5 Finiscono
 6 vogliono 7 devono

Il mercato in Italia

1 Because each little town and each district in the big towns has one at least once a week. 2 Because people come in from the surrounding areas to meet each other.

Unit 6**Vorrei parlare con il signor Rossi**

1 Next week, when she will be in Italy. She suggests Wednesday at 9 a.m. 2 He invites Angela to have dinner with him and his wife.

Exercise 1

1 il mese prossimo 2 il mese scorso 3 l'anno prossimo 4 l'anno scorso 5 ogni anno 6 domani mattina 7 ieri pomeriggio

Exercise 2

1 Il primo maggio 2 Il venticinque dicembre 3 Il quattordici luglio
 4 L'undici giugno 5 Il venticinque aprile 6 Il venti settembre

Exercise 3

(1) 115; (2) 118 – or perhaps 113, general emergency number;
 (3) 113; (4) 112; (5) 1.96.96

Andiamo al cinema

1 Monday and Wednesday 2 At Marisa's house

Exercise 4

... Biblioteca sulla salute e sullo sport ... La possibilità nella bella stagione di allenarsi all'aperto ... dal lunedì al venerdì dalle ore 9.00 alle ore 21.15, il sabato dalle ore 10.00 alle ore 12.30

... pranzo *nel* corso *dell'* intervallo ... che segue *allo* shopping, ... prima *dello* spettacolo ... sala *del* centro, ... l'altra *nella* città ...

Exercise 5

More logical order: 5, 2, 4, 6, 1, 3 (or perhaps: 3, 1)

Exercise 6

1 Si sveglia. 2 Si alza. 3 Fa la doccia. 4 Si veste. 5 Si pettina.
6 Fa colazione. 7 Si prepara ad andare a lavorare.

Exercise 7

1 d, 2 h, 3 g, 4 e, 5 a, 6 c, 7 b, 8 f

Exercise 8

1 prendi 2 gira 3 va' 4 andare 5 gira 6 sta' 7 girare 8 rallenta
9 prendi 10 cerca 11 facciamo

Exercise 9

1 Mi dica 2 Mi dia 3 Abbia pazienza 4 Mi scusi 5 Si accomodi
6 Aspetti

Exercise 10

Your text message will read something like this:

Volo in ritardo di 2 ore. Per favore, telefona all'albergo per
informare che arrivo tardi.

You may have omitted some vowels and perhaps the
punctuation:

Volo in rtrdo 2 ore. Per fav tlfona albergo infrmre arrvo tardi.

La domenica in Italia

1 Because, while many adults do not work, the children are at school in the morning. 2 Having relations to lunch; going for a walk – in the park, through the streets of the town, or in the country; going to the cinema; watching a football match, or listening to the radio commentary while out walking with the family; skiing. 3 To the sea or to the country.

Unit 7

All'albergo (1)

1 Two double rooms. 2 They should have bathrooms and be quiet. They don't mind whether the beds are double or single. 3 She asks to see the rooms.

Exercise 1

1 due giorni 2 due settimane 3 due mesi interessanti 4 due nuovi progetti 5 due banche 6 due giornali 7 due cappuccini 8 due birre 9 i nuovi film 10 gli spettacoli 11 i giornali interessanti 12 i supermercati francesi 13 le nuove gallerie 14 le strade che vanno in città 15 gli adulti responsabili 16 i vini rossi

All'albergo (2)

1 Taxes and service are included; breakfast is not. 2 Behind the hotel, at the end of the courtyard.

Exercise 2

The order should be: 8, 1, 10, 2, 13 (or 8, 2, 13, 1, 10), 4, 14, 3, 5, 9, 7, 12, 15, 6, 11

Vorrei un po' di frutta

1 They are very sweet, good for juicing. 2 She wants bananas, grapefruit and apples. 3 98 centesimi or 1 euro ($\frac{1}{2}$ kilo at 1 euro 96 centesimi a kilo).

Exercise 3

Quanto costano: le albicocche? le ciliegie? i limoni? i meloni? le pesche? le prugne? le arance? le fragole? le mele? le pere? i pompelmi? le susine? but Quanto costa l'uva?

Ho bisogno di formaggio

1 300 grammes. 2 Ham, cured ham, not cooked.

Exercise 4

- Trentadue euro novanta centesimi al chilo il prosciutto nostrano.
- Trentacinque euro sessanta centesimi al chilo il prosciutto di

Parma. – Quattro euro trenta centesimi il pecorino. – Tre euro trenta centesimi il prosciutto. – Sette euro sessanta centesimi in tutto.

Exercise 5

Vorrei 1 dei limoni, 2 dei francobolli, 3 del caffè, 4 del formaggio, 5 dell'uva, 6 dell'acqua minerale, 7 delle arance, 8 delle pesche, 9 del pane

Ci sono altri colori?

1 For his wife. 2 A green one. 3 Because his sister likes to wear her sweaters big.

Exercise 6

1 (a) compri (b) compro (c) comprate (d) compriamo 2 (a) leggo (b) legge (c) leggono 3 (a) preferisco (b) preferisce 4 (a) parlano (b) parlo (c) parla (d) parli 5 (a) vivono (b) viviamo

Il mio primo computer

1 It is about buying a computer for a child who has just started school. In Italy this will be a six-year-old, although recently the rising sixes have started to be admitted to school. 2 Buying a computer for a child is compared to buying a car to go shopping in. A Cinquecento is a small Fiat and would be adequate for the purpose.

Unit 8

Un po' di geografia

1 F (falso). 2 F – they are to be found in the Alps. 3 F – quite the opposite: three-quarters is mountain or hill. 4 V (vero). 5 F – they both have a long history of industrial development. 6 F – the Apennines are. 7 F – it is still active. 8 F. 9 V.

Exercise 1

1 Il fax deve essere spedito questa mattina. 2 La riunione può essere organizzata per lunedì. 3 L'albergo può essere prenotato per telefono. 4 La prenotazione può essere confermata per fax. 5 I biglietti devono essere ritirati a mezzogiorno. 6 Roma può essere informata via fax. 7 Il taxi può essere chiamato fra dieci minuti.

Fare il ponte nel Bel Paese

1 Because Andrea knows Italy well. 2 Spending too much time in the car. 3 He likes small, quiet places, she likes cities. 4 Verona. 5 Asolo.

Exercise 2

1 Bellissimo. 2 Simpaticissima. 3 Tranquillissimo. 4 Elegantissime. 5 Piacevolissimo.

Exercise 3

1 automaticamente 2 allegramente 3 velocemente 4 lentamente
5 bene 6 regolarmente

Exercise 4

1 Mi piace Roma. 2 Mi piacciono le montagne. 3 Mi piace visitare monumenti storici. 4 Mi piacciono le isole piccolissime. 5 Mi piacciono questi spaghetti.

Exercise 5

(a) 1 Ti piacciono i vini italiani? 2 Ti piace Venezia? 3 Ti piace studiare l'italiano? (b) 1 Le piacciono i vini italiani? 2 Le piace Venezia? 3 Le piace studiare l'italiano? (c) 1 Vi piacciono i vini italiani? 2 Vi piace Venezia ? 3 Vi piace studiare l'italiano?

Exercise 6

(a) 1 I should like to see the Campidoglio. 2 I should like to ride in a gondola in Venice. 3 I should like to throw a coin into the Trevi Fountain. 4 I should like to be at a Formula 1 race in Imola. 5 I should like to ski on the slopes of Mount Etna. 6 I should like to go to Pompei and Herculaneum. 7 I should like to see Stromboli, the volcano in the Aeolian Islands. (b) The choice is yours!

Exercise 7

1 C'è il lampadario etrusco. C'è also for numbers 2, 4, 6. Ci sono for numbers 3, 5, 7.

Translations: 1 The Etruscan lamp in the Museum of the Etruscan Academy. 2 Gino Severini's mosaics of the stations of the cross. 3 The picturesque streets in the upper (high) part of the town.

4 The view over the Val di Chiana (the Chiana Valley). 5 The works by the painter Luca Signorelli. 6 The Medici fortress. 7 The paintings by Fra Angelico in the Diocesan Museum.

Nord–Sud

1 It is poorer than the north. 2 A different history, different customs, a different climate, different terrain, the longer history of industrialization in the north, and being further away from the economic centre of Europe. 3 The ancient Greek monuments to be found there, fascinating towns and villages, the beautiful landscape and coastline and the human warmth of the people are some of the attractions.

Unit 9

Al ristorante

1 Because it is light. 2 He says it is ‘excellent, very good’. 3 Lombardy.

Exercise 1

1 Sì, mi piacciono, le prendo. 2 Sì, mi piace, la prendo. 3 Sì, mi piacciono, li prendo.

Exercise 2

Dov'è la lettera di Mary? Non la trovo. E la rivista? Non la vedo. Dove sono i francobolli per le cartoline? Non li trovo. Vedi la penna? Non la trovo. E questo conto. Non lo capisco. Aiuto!

Exercise 3

1 mi scrive ... la leggo 2 ci conosce ... Ci dà 3 Le passo 4 ti va bene 5 La vedo 6 (informal, singular, tu): ti porta ... Ti lascia; (formal, singular, Lei): La porta ... La lascia; (plural, voi): vi porta ... Vi lascia

Exercise 4

1 Il signor Galli mi conosce bene. Lo vedo ogni settimana. Mi telefona spesso. 2 Conosci il signor e la signora Fabrizi? Ti piacciono? Li vedo ogni domenica. Gli parlo al telefono quasi ogni giorno. 3 Ti scrivo una lettera. Ti mando le foto di Gianni.

La cucina italiana

1 Because cooking is still very different from one region to another. 2 Because they grow it there. 3 Fruit and vegetables. 4 Because it is not produced there, there are no olives. 5 Butter, from the cows raised there.

Una ricetta

1 One for pasta – or at least, she implies that by saying she likes pasta. 2 Oil, garlic, broccoli, macaroni and parmesan cheese. 3 Chillì; you can also add anchovies or sardines, sultanas and pine nuts.

Unit 10

Vacanze in Sicilia

1 Because he has just come back from holiday. 2 Because he normally takes his holiday in August. 3 A holiday in Sicily; because there is so much to see, the countryside is wonderful, the sea spectacular and the food and wine are good. 4 He and his wife are going to the Gargano peninsula in July. 5 Marco is going to study English in Ireland and Maria is going on a sailing course in France.

Exercise 1

1 Sono stato (assuming you are a man; for a woman: Sono stata)
2 Sono andato/a 3 Sei andato/a 4 Sono andato/a 5 Siamo partiti
6 sono rimasti

Exercise 2

1 è arrivata 2 è andato 3 sono andati 4 è stato 5 siamo arrivati
6 sono venute

Exercise 3

1 il fratello 2 il nipote/il nipotino 3 la nipote 4 la figlia 5 il cognato
6 la zia 7 la moglie 8 lo zio 9 la sorella 10 il marito

Exercise 4

If you have followed Carlo's model you can't have gone wrong.

Exercise 5

1 Sono i tuoi genitori? 2 E' la tua macchina? 3 Sono le tue sorelle?
4 Sono i tuoi figli? 5 E' il tuo ufficio? 6 E' tua moglie?

To the hotel acquaintance you would say: 1 Sono i Suoi genitori?
2 E' la Sua macchina? 3 Sono le Sue sorelle? 4 Sono i Suoi figli?
5 E' il Suo ufficio? 6 E' Sua moglie?

Exercise 6

Only you can answer this but don't forget you must use **avere** and you must either use **anni** or **ne**:

Ho quarant'anni/Ne ho quaranta

Il tempo

1 Yes, today. But not yesterday. 2 The weather is about to change. They hope the change will bring snow.

Exercise 7

1 Cloudy 2 Rough 3 Snow 4 Rain 5 (Thunder)storms

Il clima italiano

1 Fog. 2 Because it is hot and humid. 3 The Adriatic Coast tends to be colder, the Tyrrhenian milder. 4 The south.

Unit 11

Un giallo

1 Her family. 2 To the market. 3 To put the perishable food she had bought in the fridge. 4 A white Volvo parked outside the house, with two men in it. 5 As she came out of the door, they turned away so that she did not see their faces. 6 Because they are on holiday abroad.

Exercise 1

Sabato mattina *abbiamo fatto* la spesa e *abbiamo comprato* un vestito nuovo per me. Il pomeriggio *siamo andati* a una mostra interessante e poi la sera *siamo stati* a cena da vecchi amici. Domenica *abbiamo fatto* una gita con amici . . . *Siamo andati* in mare e *abbiamo pranzato* sulla barca con loro. *Abbiamo anche fatto* il bagno e *preso* il sole. Poi *abbiamo cenato* in un ristorante sul porto.

Exercise 2

1 E' uscita 2 E' salita 3 E' andata 4 E' uscita 5 E' andata 6 Si è seduta 7 Ha ordinato 8 E' stata raggiunta 9 E' uscita 10 E' salita 11 E' andata 12 ha lasciato

Exercise 3

1 Non ho comprato niente. 2 Non ho letto niente. 3 Non ho finito niente/Non ho scritto niente. 4 Non ho mangiato niente. 5 Non ho fatto niente.

La lettera di un'amica

1 Piero's marriage, the birth of her grandson and her own retirement. 2 Because it was her birthday and it was also the day her grandson was born. 3 She works as a consultant and as a writer and she looks after her grandson while her daughter is working. Her elderly parents also need help. 4 He has also retired and they were not used to being together so much. (This second point is implied rather than said.) Their house is big and each has a study of his/her own.

Exercise 4

(a) 1 Andando al lavoro, Sergio compra il giornale. 2 Essendo di Firenze, compra La Nazione. 3 Prendendo un espresso al bar, legge il giornale. (b) 1 Avendo una casa in campagna, i miei amici passano spesso il fine settimana lì. 2 Essendo grande il loro giardino, hanno sempre del lavoro da fare. 3 Avendo un orto, hanno sempre frutta e verdura fresca a tavola.

Exercise 5

1 Suona il pianoforte da ventiquattro anni. (He has played/been playing the piano for twenty-four years.) 2 Lavora . . . da quattro anni. (He has been working as an engineer for four years.) 3 Conosce Antonio da quattordici anni. (He has known Antonio for fourteen years.) 4 Studia il francese da un po' più di un anno/da sedici mesi. (He has been studying French for a little more than a year/for sixteen months.) 5 Esce con Alessia da tre anni. (He has been going out with Alessia for three years.) 6 Abita a Milano da undici anni. (He has been living in Milan for eleven years.)

Exercise 6

Open

Unit 12

La cugina italiana

1 The daughter of Angela's aunt, that is Angela's mother's elder sister, who married an Italian and who died some year's ago. 2 Because her mother had asked her to do so. 3 This is the first time she has done so. 4 A residential area on the outskirts of Turin.

Exercise 1

1 sposato 2 nel 3 maggiore 4 è nato 5 1985 6 figli 7 nata 8 è morto
9 minore 10 sposato

Ecco il mio appartamento

1 It faces west and gets the setting sun. 2 It's big enough for people to eat there. 3 Yes. (When asked if a door leads to a second bathroom she replies: Unfortunately not.) 4 Behind the building, in the courtyard. 5 A cellar.

Exercise 2

1 Ci abita da due anni. 2 Ci vado se ho tempo. 3 Ci sono stato due anni fa. 4 Ci traslocano a maggio.

Exercise 3

1 Ne abbiamo quattro. 2 Ne abbiamo tre. 3 Ne abbiamo sette in tutto. 4 Ne abbiamo uno (solo). 5 Ne abbiamo due – uno davanti e uno dietro (*or* Ne abbiamo uno davanti e uno dietro).

Answer for your own home using these structures.

Exercise 4

1 Ce ne sono tre. 2 Ce ne sono due. 3 Ce ne sono quattro. 4 Ce ne sono due. 5 Sì, ce n'è una (piccola).

Exercise 5

1 Vogliamo tornare l'anno prossimo ma non alla stessa villa. 2 L'anno prossimo vogliamo (vorremmo) un panorama sulla valle. 3 L'anno prossimo i nostri amici, i Simpson, vengono con noi, così abbiamo bisogno di quattro camere. 4 Preferiamo avere due stanze al pian terreno. 5 Vorremmo due o più bagni l'anno prossimo. 6 Soprattutto vogliamo una casa tranquilla (silenziosa), lontana dalla strada. Questa casa è (è stata) troppo rumorosa.

Exercise 6

Open

Dove vivono gli Italiani

1 Increasingly builders put in two, although sometimes the second one has a shower but no bathtub. 2 The dining room. 3 People want to get away from big cities, to the outskirts, to smaller towns or even to the country. 4 Often it is their grandparents' house. 5 They went to work in factories. 6 The fact that most families now have a car.

Unit 13**Nel 1967**

1 Blocks of flats 2 Countryside, fields, a farm with animals
3 A farmhouse 4 It wasn't made up; it was just mud 5 By tram or by coach 6 Because they use robots instead

Exercise 1

1 era 2 faceva 3 aveva 4 avevano 5 erano 6 portava 7 andava
8 aveva 9 Sembrava 10 aveva 11 era

Exercise 2

Open

Exercise 3

1 erano 2 era 3 abitavamo 4 lavorava 5 guardavamo 6 avevamo
7 faceva 8 Eravamo 9 aveva 10 mangiavamo 11 portava 12 faceva
13 eravamo 14 ci divertivamo 15 Eravamo

Exercise 4

Open

Exercise 5

1 Leggevo 2 Ci parlavamo 3 ci guardavamo 4 Ero 5 Aspettavo
6 faceva 7 Aiutavo

Exercise 6

1 Sta facendo la doccia. 2 Sta facendo una besciamella. 3 Sta leggendo un racconto alla piccola Anna. 4 E' fuori. Sta facendo la spesa. 5 Sta dormendo.

L'Italia 1945–1995

1 Democracy. 2 Television, washing machines, plastic, motor cars, computers. 3 Electricity, drinking water and (flush) lavatory. 4 They left Italy to look for work in the Americas or in Europe. 5 People spoke dialects, Italian was not widely used. 6 The ethic of saving and of sacrifice. Today she sees (conspicuous) consumption and hedonism, the pursuit of (personal) happiness. 7 The political system has not developed in parallel to the standard of living.

Unit 14**Una distorsione alla caviglia**

1 A bit better. 2 They didn't go to the cinema. Elena sprained her ankle and they went to the casualty department of the hospital. 3 Putting her foot to the ground.

Exercise 1

1 Viene spesso a trovarci. 2 Mi piacerebbe invitarlo a cena. 3 No, devo scrivergli oggi./Gli devo scrivere oggi. 4 Posso aiutarLa?/La posso aiutare? 5 No, spero di andarci quest'anno.

Exercise 2

1 Eccoli 2 Eccolo 3 Eccomi 4 Eccole

Exercise 3

(a) 1 Si diverta 2 Mi faccia un favore 3 Mi dia la chiave, per favore
4 Gli dica di venire domani (b) 1 Divertiti 2 Fammi un favore
3 Dammi la chiave, per piacere 4 Digli di venire domani

Exercise 4

1 Te lo faccio domani 2 Glielo spiego 3 Ce lo portano domani
4 Si, me ne ha parlato sabato

Dal medico

1 Sore throat, headache and stomach ache, lack of appetite and a feeling of extreme tiredness. 2 Influenza. 3 Some pastilles and a syrup as well as bed rest, lots to drink (water, weak tea etc., no alcohol).

Exercise 5

1 Una volta, sì, fumavo, ma ora non fumo più. 2 Una volta, sì, bevevo molto, ma ora non bevo più. 3 Una volta, sì, mangiavo carne rossa, ma ora non ne mangio più. 4 Una volta, sì, dormivo male, ma ora non dormo più male, dormo bene.

Exercise 6

1 Non lo vedo più. (I don't see him any more.) 2 Non mi scrive più. (He doesn't write to me any more.) 3 Non lo aiuto più. (I don't help him any more.) 4 Non ci telefoniamo più. (We don't telephone each other any more.)

Unit 15**La lotteria**

1 Rarely. 2 He would buy a new car and he would take his friends on a world tour. 3 She would buy a house by the sea, install a grand piano, take piano lessons and spend her days playing the piano. She would also invite her friends to one long party.

Exercise 1

1 Cambierebbe casa 2 Comprerebbe una casa con giardino 3 Si sposerebbe con Anita 4 Imparerebbero a giocare a golf 5 Non smetterebbe di lavorare

Exercise 2

Open

Exercise 3

1 Non fumo mai 2 Non bevo mai vodka 3 Non vado mai in discoteca 4 Non compro mai cibi surgelati 5 Non cammino mai a piedi nudi (Do you remember: Neanche per sogno!, Unit 14)

Exercise 4

1 Non vado mai al cinema 2 Non vedo nessuno nella piazza 3 A Maria non piace affatto la musica rock 4 Carlo non ha nessun amico 5 Non mangio mai al ristorante 6 Il direttore non beve niente (Or: Il direttore non beve affatto/mica) 7 Non ho niente da fare 8 Non è ancora arrivato il professore

Se fossi in te

1 She doesn't know about it – Aldo hasn't dared tell her. 2 Because she is in her last year of high school and will be going to university in the autumn. 3 She might be able to get leave from her job and either work in the US or do some further study. They are in the lead in her field in the US. 4 Their English would benefit and good English is so important nowadays. They might also find interesting possibilities for their studies.

Exercise 5

1 Se andassimo a Roma, vedremmo Marco. 2 Se mi scrivesse, risponderei. 3 Se avessimo i soldi, lo aiuteremmo. 4 Se vincessi la lotteria, Anna, che cosa faresti? 5 Se vincessi la lotteria, Prof. Turco, che cosa farebbe? 6 Se sapessero, sarebbero contenti.

Exercise 6

1 Se mi avesse detto che era stanco, l'avrei aiutato. 2 Se non avesse bevuto tanto, non si sarebbe sentito male. 3 Se non fosse andato così veloce, non avrebbe avuto l'incidente. 4 Se non fossi andata alla festa da Giulia, non avrei incontrato Tommaso. 5 Se non avessi comprato un biglietto della lotteria, non avrei vinto un premio.

I Borghi d.o.c.

1 The old heart of the town must not have more than 2.000 inhabitants and the comune overall must have no more than 15.000; and it should have an attractive layout and architecturally pleasing buildings. 2 The last line suggests readers may like to have a 'fabulous' weekend visiting (one or more).

Unit 16**Benissimo. Possiamo firmare**

1 Four. 2 15%. 3 10%. 4 A technician from Mr Rossi's firm. 5 Visit Angela's firm to see the robots in place.

Exercise 1

1 Il nostro tecnico arriverà all'aeroporto East Midlands alle 16.00 del 17 luglio/il 17 luglio alle 16. 2 Comincerà l'installazione il 18. 3 Finirà entro la fine del mese. 4 Avrà bisogno di una camera in un albergo. 5 Sarà possibile prenderlo all'aeroporto? 6 Vi sarà possibile dargli una macchina per questo periodo? 7 Spiegherà i robots ai vostri tecnici durante l'installazione.

Exercise 2

1 spedirò 2 finirò 3 telefonerò 4 ritirerò 5 aiuterò

Business letters

First letter: 1 Ingegnere Mancuso. 2 nostro, Vostro (the capital letter is a courtesy). 3 It accompanies a quotation.

Second letter: 1 Technical help. 2 Because Meccanica Panigale have already telephoned to ask for help. This is merely a confirmation.

A formal email

1 automatic despatch 2 reference works 3. Joining is absolutely free and there is no obligation to purchase 4 without images or attachments 5 electronic mailbox (casella postale is a PO box) 6 Without any cost or obligation.

Un invito

1 Gabriella and her husband will come and collect her from her hotel. 2 On Saturday morning at 8 a.m.

Exercise 3

1 vista 2 smarriti 3 mangiata? 4 assaggiato

Unit 17**Desidero che mi dia un consiglio**

1 The daughter of Angela's cousin Gabriella. 2 It must be smart but it must be suitable for important professional occasions as well as the wedding. She wants something simple, well cut and made of beautiful fabric.

Exercise 1

1 venga 2 sia partita 3 possa 4 arrivi 5 abbia comprata 6 sia andato

Exercise 2

1 faccia i letti 2 pulisca la cucina 3 lavi questi vestiti 4 stiri la biancheria 5 prepari il pranzo

Exercise 3

Vorrei: 1 una camicetta che sia facile da stirare 2 una maglia che si possa lavare in (nella) lavatrice 3 una borsa in cui ci sia spazio (posto) per un libro

Exercise 4

1 capisca 2 abbia 3 sappia 4 sia

Alla boutique

1 Because he can then tell what fabric will be suitable 2 The skirt is a bit too big 3 She finds an outfit she likes and it doesn't take long to do so; she has the rest of the morning free to visit an art gallery (museum)

Exercise 5

1 andrebbe bene; potrebbe prendere 2 volevo (**Mi ero presa** is a pluperfect 'I had taken') 3 ha comprato; non ha voluto; abbiamo risparmiato 4 farà 5 Venga; andiamo; diamoci 6 la può sostituire (direct object); Le sta molto bene (indirect object); che le piaccia (indirect object); mi piace (indirect object); mi potete (indirect object); lo prendo (direct object); diamoci (indirect, reciprocal). You may also have picked: che ne dice? ('of it') 7 gliela possiamo stringere 8 quello che cerca; quello che volevo; qualcosa che le piaccia; il vestito che ha comprato

I borghi d.o.c.

Apricale: 1 It is not explicitly said, but the implication is that it is because you are in a little town that hasn't changed much since

the thirteenth century. 2 The streets are designed for pack animals (and people) only and are too narrow for cars. (The author knows of someone who bought a house there; all the building materials he needed to make the changes he wanted were brought up on a donkey.)

Dozza: The national competition for painted walls. As the passage says, many houses have paintings on their (outside) walls. The competition takes place each year.

Castel di Tora: 1 Because the town is on the site of a Roman town. It is in fact not far north east of Rome. 2 It is on a promontory, which drops steeply into the lake. 3 It is an area of ruined castles and places where brigands used to hide.

Italian–English glossary

The translations given are those applicable in this book. Where gender is not clear, i.e. in the case of nouns not ending in **-o** or **-a**, or not accompanied by an adjective, it is indicated. For verbs in **-ire**, those that work like **capire** (i.e. have **-isc-** in certain tenses) are indicated with *. Parts of speech (noun, adverb etc.) are indicated only when there might be confusion. Words stressed on the antepenultimate syllable and those where the learner might be uncertain of stress (i.e. those ending in **-io**, **-ia**) have the vowel of the stressed syllable underlined.

Abbreviations: n. = noun; sing. = singular; pl. = plural; m. = masculine; f. = feminine; inv. = invariable; fam. = familiar, informal; adj. = adjective; adv. = adverb; pp. = past participle, prep. = preposition.

A

a, ad	to, at	abituarsi	men's and women's) to become
abbandonare	to abandon		accustomed to
abbastanza	fairly	abituato	used to,
abbigliamento	clothing		accustomed
abbinamento	matching, combination	accadere	to happen
abbonato	subscriber	accanto a	next to, beside
abbondante	abundant	accettare	to accept
abbraccio	a hug; (at end of letter) love from	accidenti!	good heavens!
		acciottolato	surface paved with cobbles
abitare	to live	acciuga	anchovy
abito	clothes, dress, suit, outfit (can be used for	accogliere	
		(pp. accolto)	to welcome, to receive

accomodarsi	to make oneself comfortable		refresher course
accompagnare	to accompany, to go with	aggiungere	to add
accordo	agreement	(pp. aggiunto)	
essere	to agree	aglio	garlic
d'accordo	agreed, OK	agnello	lamb
accorgersi	to realize, to notice	agosto	August
aceto	vinegar	agricoltura	agriculture
acqua	water	agrumi (m. pl.)	citrus fruits
acqua minerale	spring water	aiutare	to help
acqua minerale naturale	still spring water	aiuto	help
acqua minerale gassata	carbonated spring water	albergatore, -trice	hotelier
acquistare	to purchase	albergo	hotel
adattarsi	to adapt	albero	tree
adatto/a	suitable (for)	albicocca	apricot
addirittura	even	alcol (m.)	alcohol
addormentarsi	to fall asleep	alcuni/e	some
aderire	to join, belong to (e.g. a club)	al di là di	beyond
adesso	now	alimento	food
adriatico/a	Adriatic	allegro/a	happy
adulto/a	adult	allenarsi	to train
aereo	aeroplane	allergia	allergy
aerobica	aerobics	alloggio	lodging, dwelling, place to live in
aeroporto	airport		
affari (m. pl.)	business	allora	then, well then
affatto	not at all	allungarsi	to stretch
affetto	affection	almeno	at least
affettuoso/a	affectionate	alpino/a	alpine
affollare	to crowd, to flock to	altare (m.)	altar
affollato/a	crowded	alterazione (f.)	modification of the characteristics of a substance
affresco	fresco, painting done on to fresh plaster	altitudine (f.)	altitude
aggiornarsi	to get up to date, to do a	alto/a	tall, high
		altopiano	plateau
		altrimenti	otherwise
		altro/a	other, another, more
		alzarsi	to get up

amare	to love	anticipo	advance
ambasciata	embassy	antico/a	old, ancient, antique
ambasciatore (m.)	ambassador	antipasto	hors d'oeuvre, starter
ambiente (m.)	environment, surroundings	anzi	on the contrary, indeed
America	America	anziano/a (n. and adj.)	elderly (adj.); elderly person (n.)
americano/a	American	aperitivo	aperitif
amica	friend (f.)	aperto	open
amicizia	friendship	appartamento	apartment, flat
amico	friend (m.)	appassionato/a	very fond of, very keen on
amministratore delegato	managing director	appena	just, scarcely, hardly
ammirare	to admire	appena possibile	as soon as possible
amore (m.)	love	Appennini (m. pl.)	the Apennines
ampio/a	spacious	appetito	appetite
anche	also, too	appuntamento	an appointment
ancora	still; again; more	appunto	precisely, exactly
non . . . ancora	not yet	aprile (m.)	April
andare	to go; to suit	aprire (pp. aperto)	to open
andare in pensione	to retire	arancia	orange
andare via	to go away	aranciata	orangeade
andarsene	to go away, to leave	arancione	orange
andata	outward journey	architetto	architect
andata e ritorno	a return ticket	architettura	architecture
anfiteatro	amphitheatre	arco	arch, arc
angolo	corner	aria	air
animale (m.)	animal	arido	arid
animazione (f.)	animation	arma	branch, corps, arm (of a service)
annata	year (see Unit 14)	arrabbiarsi	to get angry
anniversario	anniversary	arrivare	to arrive
anno	year	arrivederci	goodbye
annoiarsi	to be bored, to get bored		
annunciare	to announce		
antenna	aerial		
antenna parabolica	satellite dish		
anticipatamente	in advance		

arrivederLa	goodbye (formal, to one person only)	automobile (f.)	motor, car
arrivo	arrival	automobilista	motorist (m. or f.)
arrosto	roast	automobilistico/a	motor (as adj.), to do with the motor car
arte (f.)	art	autostrada	motorway
articolo	article	autunno	autumn, fall
ascensore (m.)	lift, elevator	avanguardia	forefront, lead, vanguard
ascoltare	to listen to	avanti!	come in!
asfaltato/a	covered with asphalt	avere	to have
aspettare	to wait for	avvenimento	event
aspettativa	leave of absence	avvocata	(female) lawyer (but see text)
assaggiare	to taste, try (food, drink)	avvocato	lawyer
assegno	cheque	azienda	business, firm
assenza	absence	azienda per il turismo	tourist office
assistere	to be present at	azzurro	blue, sky blue
assolutamente	absolutely, at all costs		
astrazione (f.)	abstraction, abstract idea	B	
attenzione (f.)	attention	bacio	kiss
attimo	moment	bacin(o)	little kiss
attirare	attract	badare	to take notice of, to look after
attività	activity	bagaglio	baggage, luggage
attore, -trice	actor, actress (m.)	bagno	bath, bathroom
attraversare	to cross	balcone (m.)	balcony
attraverso	across, through	ballare	to dance
attuale	current, present	bambino	child, baby
attualmente	at the moment, at the present time	banca	bank
augurio	(good) wish	bancarella	stall
auguri (pl.)	best wishes	banco	bank
Australia	Australia	bandire*	to ban
australiano/a	Australian	bar (m.)	bar, café
autenticamente	authentically	barca	boat
autoambulanza	ambulance	barca a vela	sailing boat
autobus (m.)	bus	barista (m.)	barman
automatico/a	automatic	basare	to base

base (f.)	basis	bollire	to boil
a base di	based on	bollito	stewed
basilica	basilica	bolognese	in the style of Bologna
basilico	basil	boom (m.)	economic boom
basso/a	low	borgo	a small town
bastare	to be enough, sufficient	borsa	bag
battere	to beat	borsa da spesa	shopping bag
battistero	baptistry	bosco	wood
bellezza	beauty	bottiglia	bottle
bellico/a	relating to war	box (m.)	garage (integrated into building of house)
bello/a	lovely, beautiful	braccio , (pl. le braccia)	arm
benché	although	Brasile (m.)	Brazil
bene	well	brasiliano/a	Brazilian
benissimo	very well (adv.)	bravo/a	skilful, expert, good (at doing something)
benessere (m.)	well-being, prosperity	breve	short, brief
benvenuto	welcome	brioche (f.)	bun
dare il benvenuto	to welcome	britannico/a	British
bere (pp. bevuto)	to drink	broccoli (m.)	broccoli
bestiame (m.)	cattle	brutto/a	ugly, bad (of weather), nasty
biancheria	linen	buonanotte	goodnight
bianco/a	white	buonasera	good evening
biblioteca	library	buongiorno	good morning, good day
biglietteria	ticket office	buono/a	good
biglietto	ticket	burro	butter
binario	platform	busta	envelope
biondo/a	fair-haired	buttare	to throw
birra	beer		
bisognare	to be necessary	C	
bisogna	it is necessary	cabina	telephone box
bisogno	need	telefonica	
avere bisogno di	to need	cadere	to fall
bistecca	steak		
blocchetto	little block		
blu	navy blue, dark blue		
bocca	mouth		
in bocca al lupo!	good luck!		
bollente	boiling		

caffè (m.)	coffee (black); café, bar	cappello	hat
calamaro	squid	cappotto	overcoat
calcio	football, soccer	cappuccino	white coffee
calcistico/a	related to football, soccer	carabiniere (m.)	carabiniere, member of the military force with police responsibilities
caldo/a	hot	carattere (m.)	character
calmo/a	calm	caratteristico/a	characteristic, typical (of a place)
calore (m.)	warmth	carciofo	globe artichoke
calza	stocking	carie (f.)	caries, tooth decay
calzino	sock	carino/a	pretty, cute, sweet
cambiare	to change	carne (f.)	meat
cambiare aria	to have a change of scene	caro/a	expensive, dear; (n.) loved one
cambio	change, exchange	carota	carrot
camera	room, bedroom	carta	paper, card, menu
cameriere	waiter	carta di credito	credit card
camicietta	blouse	carta d'identità	identity card
camìcia	shirt	carta telefonica	phonecard
camminare	to walk	cartello	sign, notice
campagna	country, countryside	cartolina	postcard
campanile (m.)	bell tower	casa	house, home
campeggio	campsite	casalinga	housewife, homemaker
campo	field, (mil.) camp	cascina	farm, dairy, dairy farm
Canada (m.)	Canada	casetta	little house, cottage
canadese	Canadian	cassa	cash desk, till; also soundbox, (loud)speaker
canale (m.)	canal, channel	cassiere/a	cashier
cancello	gate	castello	castle, palace
Cancro	Cancer	catena	chain
candela	candle	cattedrale (f.)	cathedral
cantare	to sing		
cantina	cellar		
caotico/a	chaotic		
capace	capable		
capelli (m. pl.)	hair		
capire*	to understand		
capitale (f.)	capital		

cattivo/a	bad, naughty	chilometro	kilometre
cattolico/a	(Roman) Catholic	chissà (chi sa?)	I wonder, maybe, who knows?
causa	cause	chiudere	to close
a causa di	because of	(pp. chiuso)	
cavarsela	to get by, to manage	ciao	hello, hi (informal); goodbye (informal)
caviglia	ankle	cibo	food
celeste	blue, light blue	cielo	sky
cellulare (m.)	cellular, mobile telephone	ciliegia	cherry
cena	supper, evening meal	cima	summit
centimetro	centimetre	Cina	China
cento	a hundred	cinema (m.)	cinema
centrale	central, middle	cinese	Chinese
centralino	exchange, switchboard	cinque	five
centro	centre	ciò	that
cercare	to look for, to seek, to try	cioccolata	chocolate
cerimonia	ceremony	cioè	that is, i.e.
certo	certainly; yes, of course	cipolla	onion
certo/a	certain, some	circa	about, approximately
certe persone	some people	circondare	to surround
che	that, which, who, whom	circostante	surrounding
che!	what!	città	city, town
che? che cosa?	what?	cittadina	small town
chi?	who?	civiltà	civilization
chiacchierare	to chat, chatter	classe (f.)	class
chiamare	to call	classico/a	classic, classical
chiamarsi	to be called	cliente (m. or f.)	customer, client
chiarimento	clarification	clima (m.)	climate
chiaro/a	clear	coda	tail, queue
chiave (f.)	key	cogliere	to pick, pluck
chiedere	to ask	(pp. colto)	
(pp. chiesto)		cognato/a	brother/sister- in-law
chiesa	church	colazione, prima	breakfast
chilo	kilo	colazione	
		collaborazione	collaboration
		(f.)	

collant (m.)	tights (a pair of)	conferenza	lecture
collega (m. or f.;	colleague	confermare	to confirm
pl. -ghi, -ghe)		confessare	to confess
collettivo/a	collective	confessarsi	to make confession (to confess oneself)
collina	hill	confinante	having a shared border, neighbouring
collo	neck	congratulazioni	congratulations
colore (m.)	colour	congratularsi (f. pl.)	
coltivare	to cultivate	congresso	conference
colto/a	educated	conoscere (pp. conosciuto)	to know, to be acquainted with, to get to know
come	like, as	consegna	delivery, consignment
come?	how? what?	consegnare	to deliver, to hand over
cominciare	to begin	conservare	to conserve, to preserve
commerciale	commercial	considerare	to consider
(adj.)		considerarsi	to consider oneself
commercialista	accountant	consiglio	(piece of) advice
(m. or f.)		consistere	to consist
commesso/a	shop assistant	consolato	consulate
comodo/a	comfortable, convenient	consulente	consultant
compagnia	company	consumo	consumption
compleanno	birthday	contadino	peasant, farmer, country dweller
complesso/a	complex	contatto	contact
comportare	imply, involve	contento/a	pleased, happy
comprare	to buy	continentale	continental (adj.)
comprendere	to include, (pp. compreso)	continuare	to continue
computer (m.)	computer	continuo/a	continuous, continual
comunale	municipal		
comune	common		
comune (m.)	municipality, town council		
comunicare	to communicate		
comunque	however, anyway		
con	with		
concordare	to reach an agreement		
condizionale	conditional (mood of verb)		
(m.)			
conducente (m.)	driver		

conto	bill, account	costo	cost
per conto loro	on their own	a tutti i costi	at all costs to
contorno	vegetables served with the meat course	costruire*	construct, to build builder
contratto	contract	costruttore,	
contro	against	-trice	
controllo	check, control	costume (m.)	custom
convincere	to convince	cotoletta	cutlet
(pp. convinto)		cotone (m.)	cotton
coperto	cover (in restaurant)	cotto	cooked, having undergone a cooking process (pp. cuocere)
coppia	couple	credere	to believe, think
coprire	to cover	creocere	to grow
(pp. coperto)		cronaca	news
coraggio	courage	cucina	kitchen, cooking
coraggioso	brave	cugino/a	cousin
cordiale	cordial	cui	which, whom
coricarsi	to go to bed, to lie down	culturale	cultural
corpo	body	cuocere	to cook
corrente (f.)	current	(pp. cotto)	
corridoio	corridor	cuoco/a	cook
corrispondere	to correspond	cuore (m.)	heart
(pp. corrisposto)		cura	treatment, care
corso	boulevard, wide street; course	curare	to take care of, to treat (medically)
cortese	courteous, kind	cuscino	cushion
cortesìa	courtesy		
per cortesìa	please	D	
cortile (m.)	courtyard	da	from, since, to/at the house of
corto/a	short	dappertutto	everywhere
cosa	thing	dare (pp. dato)	to give
così	thus, so, like this, in this way	data	date
così via	and so on	dato	datum, pl. data
costa	coast	davanti (a)	in front of
costare	to cost	davvero	really
costiero/a	coastal		
costituire*	to constitute		

debole	weak	diritto	right; law
decidere	to decide	discoteca	discotheque
(pp. deciso)		disoccupazione	unemployment
decimo/a	tenth	(f.)	
decisione (f.)	decision	dispiacere	to displease
delegazione (f.)	delegation	mi dispiace	I am sorry
delicato/a	delicate	disporre	to have at one's
democrazia	democracy	(pp. disposto)	disposal, to
denaro	money		arrange
densità	density	disposizione (f.)	disposition
dente (m.)	tooth	a disposizione	available
dentista (m. or f.)	dentist	disposto/a	arranged
dentro	inside, within	distanza	distance
descrivere	to describe	distorsione (f.)	sprain
(pp. descritto)		disturbare	to disturb,
desiderare	to want,		bother
	desire, wish	ditta	firm, company
destinazione (f.)	destination	diventare	to become
destro/a	right	diverso/a	different
di	of, from,	divertente	amusing,
diagonale	diagonal		enjoyable, fun
diagonalmente	diagonally	divertimento	amusement,
dialetto	dialect		entertainment
dicembre (m.)	December	divertirsi	to enjoy oneself
dieci	ten	doccia	shower
dietro (adv.)	behind	documento	document (used
differenza	difference		to mean proof
difficile	difficult		of identity)
difficoltà	difficulty	dolce (m.)	pudding
di fronte	opposite	dolce (adj.)	sweet
diffuso/a	widespread	dolore (m.)	pain
dimenticare	to forget	domanda	question
diminuire*	to decrease	domani	tomorrow
di nuovo	again	domenica	Sunday
diocesano/a	diocesan	dominante	dominant
dipendere	to depend	dominare	to dominate,
dipinto	painting		overlook
dire (pp. detto)	to say	donna	woman
diretto	direct,	donna d'affari	businesswoman
	directed	dopo	after
direttore (m.),	director	dopodomani	the day after
-trice (f.)			tomorrow

doppio/a	double	elegante	elegant
dormire	to sleep	elementare	elementary
dottore, dottoressa	doctor	elementari (le classi)	elementary school
dove	where	elenco	list, directory
dovere	to have to, must	elettricità	electricity
dritto/a (also)	straight	elettronica	electronics
diritto/a		elettronico/a	electronic
ducale	belonging to a duke or (in Venice) doge	eliminare	to eliminate
		emergenza	emergency
due	two	emigrare	to emigrate
dunque	so, therefore	emotivamente	emotionally
duomo	cathedral	emozione (f.)	emotion
durante	during	entrarci	to be to do with
duro/a	hard	non c'entra	he/it is nothing to do with it
		entrare	to enter
E		entrata	entrance
e, ed	and	entro	by (a point in or a period of time)
eccetera, ecc.	et cetera, etc.	epoca	age, period, era
eccezionale	exceptional	all'epoca	at the time
ecco	here is/are; there is/are (pointing out); well then (starting to explain something)	errore (m.)	error, mistake
		esame (m.)	examination
economia	economy, economics	esattamente	exactly
economico/a	economical economic	esatto/a	exact
edonismo	hedonism, pursuit of happiness	esclusivamente	exclusively
educato/a	polite, well brought up	escursione (f.)	excursion
egregio/a	distinguished	esempio	example
Egregio	Dear Sir	ad esempio	for example
Signore		esercizio	exercise
elefante (m.)	elephant	esistere	to exist
		esodo	exodus, mass departure
		espresso	black coffee, express (train, letter)
		essere (pp. stato)	to be
		essere in giro	to be going around
		est (m.)	east

estate (f.)	summer	fatica	drudgery, effort, physically hard work
estendersi	to extend	fatto	fact
estero/a	foreign	fattoria	farm
all'estero	abroad	favore (m.)	favour
età	age	per favore	please
etica	ethic	fax (m.)	fax
etichetta	label, sticker	febbraio	February
etrusco/a	Etruscan	febbre (f.)	fever, high temperature
ettaro	hectare	fegato	liver
etto	100 grammes	felice	happy
Europa	Europe	ferie (f. pl.)	holidays
evacuare	to evacuate	fermare	to stop
evitare	to avoid	fermata	stop
evoluzione (f.)	evolution	fermo/a	still, not moving
F			
fa	ago	feroce	fierce
fabbrica	factory	ferrovia	railway
faccia	face	fiesta	party
facile	easy	fiaba	fable, fairy tale
fagiolino	French bean, green bean	fidanzato/a	fiancé(e)
fagiolo	bean	figlio/a	son/daughter
fai-da-te	do-it-yourself	figlio unico	only son
falso/a	false	film (m.)	film
fame (f.)	hunger	finale	final
avere fame	to be hungry	finalmente	at last, finally
famiglia	family	finanziamento	financing
familiari	family members, relations	finanziario/a	financial
famoso/a	famous	fine (f.)	end
fango	mud	fine settimana	weekend
farcela	to succeed, to manage, to make it, to cope	(m. or f.)	
fare (pp. fatto)	to do, to make	finestra	window
fare il biglietto	to buy a ticket	finire*	to end, to finish
farmacia	chemist's	fino a	as far as, until
		fiore (m.)	flower
		fiorente	flourishing
		firma	signature
		firmare	to sign
		fiscale	fiscal, relating to tax
		fissare	to fix, to arrange

fisso	fixed (as opposed to movable, portable)	friggere	to fry
fiume (m.)	river	frigorifero ,	refrigerator,
fondo	bottom	frigo	fridge
fontana	fountain	frizzante	sparkling (of wine)
forma	shape, form	fronte (f.)	forehead
formaggio	cheese	di fronte a	opposite
formale	formal	frontiera	frontier
formare	to form	frutta	fruit
formula	formula	fruttivendolo	greengrocer, fruit seller
fornire*	to provide	fuggire	to flee
forno	oven	fumare	to smoke
foro	forum	fungo	mushroom
forse	perhaps	funzionare	to work, function
forte	strong	fuoco	fire
fortezza	fortress	fuori	outside
fortuna	fortune, luck	furto	theft, burglary
fortunato/a	fortunate, lucky	futuro	future
foto (f.)	photo	G	
fra	between, among	gabinetto	lavatory; surgery (of a doctor or dentist)
fra un mese	in a month's time	galleria	art gallery
fragola	strawberry	Galles (m.)	Wales
francese	French	gallese	Welsh
Francia	France	gamba	leg
francobollo	(postage) stamp	gara	race, competition
fratello	brother	garage (m.)	garage
frattempo	meanwhile	garanzia	guarantee
nel frattempo	in the meanwhile	gelateria	ice cream parlour
frazione (f.)	outlying village	gelato	ice cream
freddo/a	cold	genealogico/a	genealogical
frequentare	to frequent; to attend (school)	albero	family tree
frequente	frequent	genealogico	
fresco/a	fresh, cool	generalmente	generally, usually
fretta	haste		
avere fretta	to be in a hurry		

genere (m.)	kind, sort	gita	excursion, trip, outing
in genere	generally	gitante	tripper, person on an outing
genero	son-in-law	(m. or f.)	down
genitori (m. pl.)	parents	giù	June
gennaio	January	giugno	arrive, reach
gente (f. sing.)	people	giungere	(pp. giunto)
gentile	kind	giusto/a	right, correct, just
Gentile	Dear Madam	gnocchi (m. pl.)	gnocchi, dumplings
Signora		godere	to enjoy
geografia	geography	gola	throat
gerundio	gerund	golf (m.)	golf; cardigan
gestire*	to manage	golfo	gulf, bay
gettare	to throw	gondola	gondola
getto	a jet, a spout	gonna	skirt
getto	ink-jet	governo	government
d'inchiostro		grammo	gramme
già	already	grana	a type of hard cheese (slightly granular in texture); parmesan
giacca	jacket	Gran Bretagna	Great Britain
giallo/a	yellow	granché	a lot (usually used in negative sentences)
giallo, n	a detective story	grande	big, large
Giappone (m.)	Japan	grandine (f.)	hail
giapponese	Japanese	grattare	to scratch
giardino	garden	gratuito/a	free
giara	terracotta jar for storage of oil	grazie	thanks, thank you
ginnasio	high school (the first two years of the classical liceo)	greco/a	Greek
giocare	to play (a game)	grigio/a	grey
giornalaio/a	newspaper seller	griglia	grill
giornale (m.)	newspaper	grosso/a	big
giornata	day (see Unit 14)	guardare	to look, to watch
giorno	day		
giovane	young		
giovedì (m.)	Thursday		
girare	to turn, to go around, to circulate		
giro	circuit, circle, tour		
andare in giro	to go around		

Guardia di Finanza	tax police	impossibile	impossible
guarire*	to cure, to heal, to get better	impresa	enterprise, business
guerra	war	inattivo/a	inactive, dormant (of volcano)
guida (f. even if male)	guide, guidebook	incantevole	enchancing, delightful, charming
guidare	to guide; to drive (a vehicle)	incendio	fire
I		incertezza	uncertainty
idea	idea	incidente (m.)	accident
identità	identity	includere	to include
ieri	yesterday	(pp. incluso)	
illustrato/a	illustrated	incontro	meeting
immaginare	to imagine	indicatore	indicator
immagine (f.)	image	indietro	back; (of clock, watch) slow
immensamente	immensely, enormously	indirizzo	address
imparare	to learn	indiscutibile	unquestionable, undisputable
impegnativo/a	exacting, demanding; (of price) high	indomani	the next day
impegnato/a	engaged, busy, committed	industria	industry
impegno	commitment, pledge	industriale	industrial
imperfetto	imperfect	industrializza-	industrialization
imperiale	imperial	zione	
impermeabile	raincoat	in effetti	in fact
impianto	plant, machinery, equipment	infatti	yes, indeed
impiegato	employee	infelice	unhappy
importante	important	infermiere/a	nurse
importare	to matter, to be important	infine	finally
non importa	it doesn't matter	infinito/a	infinite; innumerable
		infinito (n.)	infinitive
		infisso	window frame
		influenza	influence; influenza
		influire*	to influence
		informare	to inform
		informarsi	to inform oneself

informazione (m.)	information	interrompere (pp. interrotto)	to interrupt
ingegnere (m.)	engineer	intervallo	interval, break
Inghilterra	England	intervento	intervention
ingiallito/a	yellowed	inteso	understood, agreed
inglese	English	intimità	intimacy
iniziativa	initiative	intorno (adv.)	around
inizio	start, beginning	intorno a (prep.)	round, around
innamorato/a	in love	intuizione (f.)	intuition
inoltre	besides, furthermore, moreover	inutile	useless
inquinamento	pollution	invece	instead, on the other hand
in realtà	in fact	inventare	to invent
insalata	salad	inverno	winter
insegna	sign	investigatore (m.)	investigator, detective
insegnante (m. or f.)	teacher	invia	to send
inserire*	to insert, to settle, to fit in	invio	despatch, sending
insieme	together	invitare	to invite
insistere	to insist	invito	invitation
insolitamente	unusually	io	I
insolito/a	unusual	Irlanda	Ireland
insomma	in short	irlandese	Irish
installare	to install	irrigare	to irrigate
installazione (f.)	installation	iscriversi	to enrol
intanto	meanwhile	iscrizione (f.)	enrolment, joining (a club, a service)
intensamente	intensively, strongly	isola	island
interamente	entirely	isolare	to isolate
interessante	interesting	istruito/a	educated
interessarsi	to be interested in	italiano/a	Italian
interesse (m.)	interest	L	
interno	interior; (telephone) extension	là	there
interno/a	internal	lago	lake
intero/a	whole	lamentarsi	to complain
interrogativo	question, problem	lampadario	chandelier, candleholder

lana	wool	litro	litre
largo	wide	locale (m.)	room, establishment, premises
lasagne (f. pl.)	pasta in flat sheets	locale	local
lasciare	to leave	lombardo/a	Lombard, of Lombardy
latitudine (f.)	latitude	lontano/a	far (adj. and adv.)
lato	side	lotteria	lottery
latte (m.)	milk	luglio	July
lavanderia	utility room, laundry	lui	he, him
lavarsi	to wash (oneself)	luminoso/a	light
lavatrice (f.)	washing machine	lunedì (m.)	Monday
lavorare	to work	lungo/a	long
lavoro	work, job	lungo	along
legge (f.)	law	luogo	place
leggere (<i>pp.</i> letto)	to read	lupo	wolf
leggero/a	light	in bocca al lupo!	good luck!
legno	wood		
lei	she, her	M	
Lei	you (formal)	ma	but
lentamente	slowly	macché	you're joking! what nonsense!
lento/a	slow	maccheroni	maccheroni, macaroni (short pasta tubes)
leone (m.)	lion	macchina	car, automobile
lettera	letter	macchinetta	little machine
letto	bed	macellaio	butcher
lettura	reading	macerie (f. pl.)	rubble, ruins
lezione (f.)	lesson	madre (f.)	mother
lì	there	madre-lingua (f.)	mother tongue
libero/a	free	magari	perhaps; would that it were so!
libertà	freedom, liberty	maggio	May
libreria	bookshop	maggiorana	marjoram
libro	book		
liceo	high school		
lieto/a	happy		
limone (m.)	lemon		
linea	line		
lingua	tongue, language		
linguaggio	language		
lirico/a	lyric		
musica lirica	opera		

maggiore	bigger, major	martedì (m.)	Tuesday
fratello	elder brother	marzo	March
maggiore		massa	mass
maglia	sweater	di massa	for the masses
magnifico/a	magnificent, wonderful, splendid	massimo/a	greatest, biggest
magro/a	thin, lean, non-oily (of fish)	master (m.)	a master's degree, particularly MBA
mai	never	matrimoniale	matrimonial, (of bed) double
maiale (m.)	pig, pork	matrimonio	wedding
malattia	illness	mattinata	morning (see Unit 14)
male	bad	mattino/mattina	morning
fare male	to hurt	maturità	maturity; high school diploma
meno male	fortunately, luckily	medicina	medicine
malessere (m.)	malaise, indisposition; bad condition	medico	doctor
	financially	medievale	mediaeval
malsano/a	unhealthy, morbid	medio/a	medium(-sized), middle, average
maltempo	bad weather	meglio (adv.)	better
mamma	mummy, mom	mela	apple
mancare	to be missing	melanzana	aubergine, eggplant
mangiare	to eat	melone (m.)	melon
mano (f.)	hand	membro	member
(pl. mani)		memoria	memory
mantenere	to maintain	meno	less, minus
manzo	beef	mentre	while
marchio	symbol or mark, indicating where a product comes from	meraviglia	wonder, marvel
		meraviglioso/a	marvellous
mare (m.)	sea	mercato	market
marito	husband	mercoledì (m.)	Wednesday
marrone	brown	merenda	snack (in the afternoon, for children)
marsala	dessert wine from Marsala in Sicily	meridionale	southern
		meritare	to deserve
		mescolare	to mix

mese (m.)	month	moderno/a	modern
messaggio	message	modo	way; mood
Messico	Mexico	in ogni modo	anyway, in any case
messicano/a	Mexican	modulo	form
meta	destination	moglie (f.)	wife
metà	half	molto (adv.)	very, very much
metro	metre	molto/a (adj.)	many, much
metterci	(of time) to take	momento	moment, time
mettere	to put	mondiale (adj.)	world
(pp. messo)		la seconda	the Second
mezzanotte (m.)	midnight	guerra	World War
mezzo	half, middle	mondiale	
in mezzo a	in the middle of	mondo	world
mezzogiorno	noon, midday; south; southern Italy	moneta	coin
mica	not at all	montagna	mountain
migliorare	to improve	monte (m.)	mount, mountain
migliore, il/la migliore (adj.)	the best	monumento	monument
migliore (adj.)	better	morbido/a	soft
milione (m.)	million	morboso/a	morbid
milite ignoto	unknown soldier	morire	to die
mille (m.)	a thousand	(pp. morto)	
millimetro	millimetre	mosaico	mosaic
minestra	soup; the pasta course	mosso/a	(of sea) rough
minimo/a	least	mostra	exhibition
ministro	minister	mostrare	to show
minore	smaller, minor	motivo	reason
il/la minore	the smallest	mucca	cow
minuto	minute	multa	fine
mio/a	my	municipio	town hall
miracolo	miracle	muscolo	muscle
misero/a	poor, wretched, paltry	museo	museum, gallery
misteriosamente	mysteriously	musica	music
mistero	mystery	musica lirica	opera
misura	size		
mite	mild	N	
modello	model	nascere (pp. nato)	to be born
modernizzare	to modernize	nascita	birth
		naso	nose
		Natale (m.)	Christmas
		naturale	natural

naturalmente	naturally, of course	notevole	notable, significant, considerable
nazionale	national	notizia	piece of news
neanche	not even	noto	known, well- known
nebbia	fog	notte (f.)	night
necessario/a	necessary	nove	nine
negoziante (m.)	shopkeeper, tradesman	novembre (m.)	November
negozio	shop	novità	innovation, novelty, newness
nemmeno	not even	nudo/a	naked, bare
neozelandese	New Zealander, from New Zealand	nulla	nothing
neppure	not even	numero	number
nero/a	black	numeroso/a	numerous, many
nervi (m. pl.)	nerves	nuora	daughter-in-law
nessuno/a	none, not one	Nuova Zelanda	New Zealand
neve (f.)	snow	nuovo/a	new
nevicare	to snow	di nuovo	again
nevralgia	neuralgia	nuvoloso/a	cloudy
niente	nothing		
nipote (m. or f.)	nephew, niece; grandson, granddaughter	O	
nipotino/a	little nephew/ niece; grandson/ granddaughter	o	or
no	no	obliterare	obliterate, punch (a ticket)
noce (f.)	walnut	occasione (f.)	opportunity, bargain; occasion
noi	we	occhio	eye
nome (m.)	name	(pl. occhi)	
non	not	occidentale	western
nonna	grandmother	occorrere	to be necessary
nonno	grandfather	occorre	it is necessary
nono/a	ninth	occupare	to occupy
nord (m.)	north	occuparsi (di)	to look after, take care of
normale	normal	occupato/a	occupied, busy
nostrano/a	local, locally produced	odierno/a	of today
nostro/a	our	odori (m. pl.)	herbs
notare	to note, notice	offerta	offer

offrire	to offer	ospitalità	hospitality
(pp. offerto)		ottavo/a	eighth
oggetto	object, purpose; (at head of letter) re	ottimo/a	very good, excellent
oggi	today	otto	eight
ogni	every, each	ottobre (m.)	October
ognuno/a	everyone, each person	ovest (m.)	west
Olanda	Holland (more correctly: Paesi Bassi)	P	
olandese	Dutch	pace (f.)	peace
olio	oil	padano/a	relating to the valley/plain of the river Po
oliva	olive	padre (m.)	father
oltre	beyond	paesaggio	scenery, countryside
opera	work; opera	paese (m.)	country; village
operaio/a	workman, worker	pagamento	payment
opinione (f.)	opinion	pagare	to pay
opportunità	opportunity	paio (m.; pl.)	pair
oppure	or, or else	paia, f.)	
ora (adv.)	now	palazzo	palace, large building, block of flats/ apartments
ora (n.)	hour, time	palestra	gymnasium
orario	timetable, schedule	pane (m.)	bread
orchestrina	small orchestra (as in a café or restaurant)	panino	bread roll
ordinare	to order	panna	cream
ordine (m.)	order	panorama	view (m. inv.)
orecchio	ear	pantaloni	trousers
organizzare	to organize	(m. pl.)	
orientale	eastern	parcheggiare	to park
ormai	now	parcheggio	a parking space, a car park
oro	gold	parco	park
orologio	clock, watch	parecchio/a	a lot, a good deal, (pl.) several
orto	kitchen garden, vegetable garden	parente	relation
oscillazione (f.)	oscillation	(m. or f.)	
ospedale (m.)	hospital		

parere (pp. parso)	to seem	pazienza avere	patience to be patient
pari a	equal to	pazienza	never mind!
parlare	to talk, to speak	pazienza!	what a pity
parmigiano	Parmesan cheese	peccato (che	
parola	word	peccato)	
parte (f.)	part, side	pecora	sheep, ewe
la maggior	the majority	pecorino	cheese made from ewe's milk
parte		pedonale	reserved for pedestrians
partenza	departure	peggio (adv.)	worse
participio	participle	peggiore (adj.)	worse
particolare	particular	pelle (f.)	leather, skin
particolarmente	particularly	pendente	leaning, hanging
partire	to set off, leave, depart	pendice (f.)	slope
partita	match (sport)	penisola	peninsula
Pasqua	Easter	penna	pen
passaporto	passport	pensare	to think
passare	to pass	pensiero	thought
passato	sieved or liquidized soup	pensione (f.)	pension
passato/a	past	pepe (m.)	pepper
passato	near past	peperoncino	chilli
prossimo	(tense), past perfect	peperone (m.)	(green or red) pepper
passato remoto	remote past (tense), past absolute, past historic	per	for
passaggiare	to go for a walk	per cortesia	please
passaggiata	walk, stroll	per favore	please
passo	step	per piacere	please
pasta	pastry, pasta (spaghetti etc.)	pera	pear
pastiglia	pastille	perché	why; because; so that (+ subjunctive)
pasto	meal	perciò	therefore
patata	potato	percorso	journey, distance travelled
patria	native land, fatherland	perdere	to lose
patrimonio	heritage	(pp. perduto or perso)	
pausa	pause, break	perfetto/a	perfect
paziente	patient	perfino (adv.)	even

pericoloso/a	dangerous	piazza	square
periferia	suburbs, outskirts	piazzale (m.)	large square
periodo	period	piazzetta	little square
permettere	to allow, permit	piccante	sharp tasting, piquant
(pp. permesso)		piccolo/a	small, little
però	however, but	piede (m.)	foot
persona	person	a piedi	on foot
personaggio	personage, character	pieno/a	full
personale	personnel (n.); personal (adj.)	pilota	pilot
pesante	heavy	pinolo	pine nut
pesca	peach	pioggia	rain
pescatore (m.)	fisherman	piovere	to rain
pesce (m.)	fish	pipa	pipe
pessimo	very bad	pisello	pea
pettinarsi	to comb, do one's hair	pittore, -trice	painter
pezzo	piece	pittoresco/a	picturesque
piacere (m.)	pleasure	più	more, most, plus
per piacere	please	non . . . più	no longer
piacere	to be pleasing	piuttosto	rather
mi piace	I like, it is pleasing to me	pizzeria	pizzeria, pizza restaurant
piacevole	pleasant, pleasing	plastica	plastic
piangere	to weep, to cry	poco, un po'	a little bit
(pp. pianto)		poi	next, then
piano (adv.)	slowly, carefully, softly	poiché	since, as
piano	floor	polenta	maize flour porridge, polenta
al secondo	on the second	politica	politics
piano	floor	politico/a	political
pianoforte (m.)	piano	polizia	police
pianoforte a	grand piano	pollo	chicken
coda		polmone (m.)	lung
pianta	plan	polso	wrist
pian terreno	ground floor	pomeriggio	afternoon
pianura	plain	pomodoro	tomato
piatto	dish, plate	pompelmo	grapefruit
		ponte (m.)	bridge
		popolare	popular, belonging to the people

popolazione (f.)	population	prefisso	telephone area/ country code
popolo	the people	pregare	to pray, ask
porcino	cèpe (type of mushroom)	prego	go ahead; don't mention it
porgere (saluti)	to offer (greetings) in a formal letter	premio	prize
porta	door; (in airport) gate	prendere (pp. preso)	to take, to have (coffee, beer, etc.)
porta-finestra	French window	prenotare	to book, reserve
portare	carry, take, bring, wear	prenotazione (m.)	booking
portatile	portable; (of computer) laptop	preoccuparsi	to worry
portico	portico, arcade	preparare	to prepare
posizione (f.)	position	prepararsi	to get (oneself) ready
possedere	to possess	presentare	to present, introduce
possibile	possible	presente	present; (in formal letter) this letter
possibilità	possibility	presidente	presidente
posta	post, mail	presidente del	prime minister
posto	place; space, room	consiglio	
potabile	potable, drinkable	pressione (f.)	pressure
potente	powerful; as a noun (m.) power	presto (adv.)	soon, early, quickly
potenza	power	preventivo/a	preventive
potere	to be able to	preventivo	estimate, (price) quotation
povero/a	poor	previsione (f.)	forecast
pranzo	lunch, midday meal	prezzemolo	parsley
pratica	practice	prezzo	price
praticante	practising	prigioniero/a	prisoner
pratico/a	practical	prima (di)	before
prato	meadow, grassy field	(prep.)	
preciso/a	precise	prima (adv.)	before, earlier
preferire*	to prefer	prima colazione	breakfast
preferito/a	favourite	primavera	spring
		primo/a	first
		primo	(in meal) the first (pasta) course

principale	principal	provvedere	to see to, to take care of, make provision for
privato/a	private		
probabile	probable	prugna	plum
probabilmente	probably	pubblicità	advertising, publicity
problema	problem		
(m.; pl. -i)		pubblico/a	public
prodotto	product, produce	pulire*	to clean
produrre	to produce	pulito/a	clean
(pp. prodotto)		pullman (m.)	motor coach
professionale	professional	punto	point
professore	teacher	può darsi	maybe, perhaps
	(secondary school or university)	pure	by all means, also; even, yet
professoressa	(female) teacher		
profumo	perfume, scent	purtroppo	unfortunately
progetto	project, plan		
promettere	to promise	Q	
(pp. promesso)		qua	here
pronto	hello (answering the telephone)	quadrato/a	squared
		qualche cosa,	something
pronto/a	ready	qualcosa	
pronto soccorso	accident and emergency (hospital), first aid	qualche	some
		qualcuno/a	someone
pronunciare	to pronounce	quale	which
proporre	to propose	qualsiasi	any (it doesn't matter which)
proprietario/a	owner		
proprio (adv.)	really, right, precisely	qualunque	any (it doesn't matter which)
proprio/a	own	quando	when
prosciutto	ham	quanto/a	how much, how many
prosciutto cotto	cooked ham		
prosciutto crudo	cured ham, Parma ham	quartiere (m.)	district
		quarto/a	fourth
proseguire	to continue	quarto	quarter
prospero/a	prosperous	quasi	almost
prossimo/a	next	quattro	four
provare	to try	quello/a	that, that one
proverbio	proverb	questione (f.)	question
provincia	province	questo/a	this
		qui	here

quinto/a	fifth	residenza	residence
quotidiano/a	daily	residenziale	residential
R			
raccontare	to tell, relate	resistere	to resist
racconto	story	respirare	to breathe
radio (f.)	radio	responsabile	responsible
radiografia	X-ray	restante (m.)	remainder
radiolina	little, portable radio	restare	to remain
rafforzare	to strengthen	restauro	restoration
raffreddore (m.)	cold	resti (m. pl.)	remains
ragazza	girl, girlfriend	restituire*	to give back
ragazzo	boy, boyfriend	resto	remainder
raggiungere	to reach, to join	riaprire	to reopen
(pp. raggiunto)		ricchezza	wealth
ragione (f.)	reason	ricco/a	rich
avere ragione	to be right	ricetta	recipe; prescription
rallentare	to slow down, to reduce speed	ricevere	receive
rapidamente	fast, quickly	ricevuta	receipt
rapido	express, fast train	richiamare	call back, call again
rapido/a	fast	richiedere	to request
raramente	rarely	(pp. richiesto)	
re (m.)	king	richiesta	request
reale	royal	ricordare	to remember, recall
realità	reality	ricoverare	to admit to hospital
in realtà	in fact	ridere (pp. riso)	to laugh
recente	recent	ridurre	to reduce
reddito pro	per capita	(pp. ridotto)	
capite	income	riempire	to fill
regalo	present	riforma	reform
regione (f.)	region	rilassarsi	to relax
regolare	regular	rimandare	to send back
regolarità	regularity	rimanere	to remain
regolarmente	regularly	(pp. rimasto)	
relativamente	relatively	rincorrere	to run around looking for
religioso/a	religious	ringraziare	to thank
rendersi conto	to realize	riparare	to repair
rene (m.)	kidney	riparazione (f.)	repair
		riposante	restful

riposarsi	to rest	rudere (m.)	ruin
ripostiglio	boxroom, lumber-room	rumore (m.)	noise
riprendersi (pp. ripreso)	to recover	rumoroso/a	noisy
risaia	rice field, paddy field	rurale	rural
rischio	risk	russo/a	Russian
rischioso/a	risky	S	
riso	rice	sabato	Saturday
risolvere (pp. risolto)	to resolve	sacrificio	sacrifice
Risorgimento	revival, Risorgimento	sala	hall, room
risparmiare	to save	sala da ballo	dance hall
risparmio	saving, thrift	sala d'attesa	waiting room
rispondere (pp. risposto)	to answer	sala operatoria	operating theatre
risposta	answer	salario	salary
ristorante (m.)	restaurant	salato/a	salty, salted
ristoratore/trice	restorative	saldatura	welding
ritardo	lateness, delay	sale (m.)	salt
ritirare	to withdraw; to collect	saletta	small room
ritorno	return	salire	to go up, to get on/into (vehicle)
ritrovarsi	to meet	salmon (m.)	salmon
riunione (f.)	meeting	salone (m.)	hall, large room
riuscire	to succeed	saltare	to jump
riva	shore, bank	salutare	to say hello to, to greet
rivedere	to see again	salute (f.)	health
rivelare	to reveal	saluto	greeting
rivista	magazine	distinti saluti	yours faithfully
robot (m.)	robot	salvia	sage
robotizzato/a	robotized, automated	sandalo	sandal
romanico/a	romanesque	sangue (m.)	blood
romano/a	Roman	sanitario/a	related to health
romantico/a	romantic	sano/a	healthy
rosa (inv.)	pink	santo (san , sant')	saint
rosmarino	rosemary	sapere	to know
rosso/a	red	saporito/a	tasty
		Sardegna	Sardinia

sardina	sardine	scultura	sculpture
sbagliare	to make a mistake	scuola	school
sbarrato	blocked, barricaded	scuro/a	dark
scala	staircase	scusare	to excuse
scaloppina	escalope	scusarsi	to excuse oneself, to apologize
scappare	to dash (away), to escape, to run away	sdraiarsi	to lie down
scarpa	shoe	se	if
scegliere (pp. scelto)	to choose	secolo	century
scelta	choice	secondo	second (in a meal) the main (fish/meat) course
scemo/a	silly	secondo/a	second
scendere (pp. sceso)	to go down, to come down, to get off, out of (vehicle)	secondo me, te, lui ecc.	according to me, you, him etc.
scheda	(index) card	sedersi	to sit
schiena	back	segnalare	to point out, to make known
sci (m.)	skiing, ski	segretario/a	secretary
sciare	to ski	segreteria	telephone
sciatore, sciatrice	skier	telefonica	answering machine
sciroppo	syrup, linctus	seguire	to follow
scolare	to strain, drain	sei	six
scontato/a	discounted, with a discount	semaforo	traffic light
sconto	discount	sembrare	to seem
scontrino	till receipt, check	seminterrato	basement, semi- basement
scoperta	discovery	semplice	simple
scopo	aim	semplicemente	simply
scoprire (pp. scoperto)	to discover, uncover	semplificato	simplified
scorso/a	last	sempre	always
Scozia	Scotland	sempre dritto	straight on
scozzese	Scottish	sensato	sensible
scrittore, -trice	writer	sensibile	sensitive
scrivere (pp. scritto)	to write	senso	sense, feeling, meaning
		sentimentale	sentimental, related to the feelings

sentire	to feel, to hear, to listen	signora	Mrs, madam, lady
senza	without	signore	Mr, sir, gentleman, man
senz'altro	of course, without fail	signorina	Miss, young lady
separare	to separate	silenzio	silence
sera	evening	simile	similar
serata	evening (see Unit 14)	simpatico/a	likeable, nice
sereno/a	cloudless, clear	sindacato	trade union
serietà	seriousness, (for a shopkeeper, trustworthiness)	sindaco	mayor
serie (f.) (pl. le serie)	division	singolo/a	single
servire	to serve	sinistra	left
servizio	service	sintomo	symptom
doppi servizi	two bathrooms	sistema	system
servizio sanitario	health service	(m.; pl. -i)	
sesto/a	sixth	smarrire*	to mislay, lose
seta	silk	smettere	to stop
sete (f.)	thirst	soccorso	help, aid, assistance
sette	seven	sociale	social
settembre (m.)	September	società	society, company
settentrionale	northern	socio	member
settimana	week	soggiorno	living room
settimo/a	seventh	sogliola	sole (fish)
settore (m.)	sector	sognare	to dream
sgabello	stool	sogno	dream
si	(indef. pr.) one, people, they; (refl. pr.) himself, herself, themselves	neanche per	never in 1,000 years
si	yes	sogno	years
siccome	since, for the reason that	soldi (m. pl.)	money
Sicilia	Sicily	sole (m.)	sun
siciliano/a	Sicilian	solito/a	usual
sicuro/a	safe, certain, sure, secure	di solito	usually
		solo (adv.)	only
		solo/a (adj.)	alone, single, only one
		soltanto (adv.)	only
		soluzione (f.)	solution
		sondaggio	sounding, survey, opinion poll
		sonno	sleep

sopra	above	spettacolare	spectacular
soprattutto	especially, above all	spettacolo	show
sorella	sister	spiaggia	beach
sorprendente	surprising	spiegare	to explain
sorprendere	to surprise	spinaci (m. pl.)	spinach
(pp. sorpreso)		spirito	spirit
sorridere	to smile	spogliatoio	changing room
sosta	pause, stop	sporco/a	dirty
sostituire*	to substitute, to put something in place of	sport (m.)	sport
		sportivo/a	sporting, fond of sports
sotto	under	sposare	to marry
sottoporre	to submit	sposarsi	to get married
(pp. sottoposto)		sposato/a	married
sottosviluppato/a	underdeveloped	spostare	to move, displace
spaghetti (m. pl.)	spaghetti	spremuta	freshly squeezed citrus fruit
Spagna	Spain	spumante (m.)	sparkling (of wine), champagne- type
spagnolo/a	Spanish	spuntino	snack
spago	string	squadra	team
spalla	shoulder	stabile	stable (adj.)
spasso	recreation	stadio	stadium
andare a	to go for a	stagione (f.)	season
spasso	walk	stamattina	this morning
spazio	space	(questa mattina)	
spazioso/a	spacious	stampante (f.)	printer (machine for printing)
spazzare	to sweep	stanco/a	tired
speciale	special	stanotte	tonight, this night, last night
specifico/a	specific	(questa notte)	
spedire*	to send	stanza	room
spendere	to spend	stare	to stay, to remain; + infinitive to be about to
(pp. speso)			
speranza	hope		
sperare	to hope		
spesa	expense, shopping		
fare la spesa	to go shopping		
spesso	often		
spettabile	Messrs (formal way of addressing firm in letters)		

stasera	this evening	sud (m.)	south
(questa sera)		Sud Africa	South Africa
stato	state	sudafricano/a	South African
Stati Uniti	United States	suggerimento	suggestion
(m. pl.)		suggerire*	to suggest
stavolta (questa volta)	this time	sugo	gravy, sauce, juice
stazione (f.)	station	suo/a	his, her, your
stella	star	suocero/a	father-/mother-in-law
stesso/a	same	suonare	to play (a musical instrument); to ring
stile (m.)	style	superficie (f.)	surface
stimolante	stimulating	supermercato	supermarket
stimolare	to stimulate	superscontato	with a big discount
stivale (m.)	boot	supplemento	supplement
stomaco	stomach	surgelato/a	(deep) frozen
storia	history	susina	plum
storico/a	historical	sveglia	alarm clock
strada	street, road	svegliarsi	to wake up
stradale	related to the roads	sviluppo	development
incidente stradale	road accident	Svizzera	Switzerland
stradina	little street, lane	svizzero/a	Swiss
straniero/a	foreigner	T	
strano/a	strange	tabaccaio/a	tobacconist
stretto/a	narrow	tacchino	turkey
stringere	to squeeze, take in (clothing)	tagliatelle (f. pl.)	pasta in flat ribbons
(pp. stretto)		taglio	cut
studente (m.)	student	tailleur (m.)	(woman's) suit
studentessa	female student	tanto/a	so much, (pl.) so many, (+ adj.) so
studiare	to study	tardare	to be late
studio	study	tardi	late
(pl. gli studi)		tariffa	tariff, fare
stufato	stew	tartufo	truffle
su	on, upon, up		
subito	immediately, suddenly		
succedere	to happen		
(pp. successo)			
successo	success		
succo	juice		

tasca	pocket	testa	head
tascabile	pocket (adj.)	tifoso/a	fan (sport)
tassa	tax	tilt (in tilt)	upside down, in confusion
tasso	rate, level	timo	thyme
tastiera	keyboard	tinello	small dining room; kitchen- diner; scullery
tavernetta	party room (in basement of modern house)	tipico/a	typical
tavola, tavolo	table	toast (m.)	toasted sandwich
tavola calda	snack bar	togliere	to remove
tavolino	small table	(pp. tolto)	
taxi (also: tassi)	taxi	tomba	tomb
tè/the (m.)	tea	tornare	to return, to come back
teatro	theatre	torre (f.)	tower
tecnico	technician	torta	cake
tecnico/a	technical	tortellini (m. pl.)	pasta with meat stuffing
tedesco/a	German	torto, avere	to be wrong
telefonare	to telephone	tra	between, among
telefonata	telephone call	traduzione (f.)	translation
telefonicamente	by telephone	traffico	traffic
telefonino	mobile telephone	tram (m.)	tram
telefono	telephone	tramonto	sunset
teleselezione (f.)	direct dialling (long distance)	tranquillo/a	quiet
televisione (f.)	television	transizione (f.)	transition
temperatura	temperature	trappola	trap
tempestiva- mente	in good time	traslocare	to move house
tempio	temple	trattoria	restaurant
tempo	time, weather	travellers	travellers'
tempo libero	free, spare time	cheque	cheque
temporale (m.)	storm	(m. inv.)	
tenere	to hold, to keep	tre	three
tennis (m.)	tennis	treno	train
terra	earth, land, ground	triste	sad
terrazzo	terrace, balcony	troppo	too
terreno	land, ground	trota	trout
territorio	territory	trovare	to find
terzo/a	third	andare a	to go and see (a person)
tessuto	fabric, cloth	trovare	
		trovarsi	to be situated

tu	you (fam.)	V	
tuo/a	your	va bene	OK, good, that's fine
tuono	thunder	vacanza	holiday
turismo	tourism	valido/a	valid
turista (m. or f.)	tourist	valigia	suitcase
turistico/a	touristic	valle (f.)	valley
tutto/a	all	valuta	currency
TV, tivù (f.)	TV	vantaggio	advantage
U		variare	to vary
uccidere	to kill	vario/a	various
(pp. ucciso)		vasca (da bagno)	bathtub
ufficio	office	vecchio/a	old
ufficio postale	post office	vedere	to see
ultimo/a	last (in a series)	(pp. visto or veduto)	
umano/a	human	veicolo	vehicle
umidità	damp, humidity	vela	sail, sailing
umido/a	damp, wet	veloce	fast
un, un', uno,	a, an, one	velocemente	rapidly
una		vena	vein
unico/a	unique, only	vendere	to sell
unificazione (f.)	unification	vendita	sale
università	university	venditore, -trice	seller
universitario/a	university	venerdì (m.)	Friday
uomo	man	venire	to come
(pl. uomini)		(pp. venuto)	
uomo d'affari	businessman	venire fuori	to come out
uovo (m.; pl.	egg	vento	wind
le uova f.)		veramente	actually, truly, really
urbano/a	urban	verbo	verb
vigile urbano	town policeman	verde	green
urgenza	emergency	verdura	(green) vegetable
d'urgenza	urgently, as an emergency	verificare	to check
usare	to use	vero/a	true
uscire	to go out	versare	to remit, to pay in, to pay (a cheque)
uscita	exit	verso	towards; at about
utile	useful		
uva	grapes		
uva passa	raisins		

vestiario	clothing, wardrobe	vitello	veal
vestirsi	to get dressed, to dress	vivace	lively
vestito	clothing, dress	vivere	to live (pp. vissuto)
via	street	vivo/a	alive
via (adv.)	away with . . . , be off! go away!	vocabolario	vocabulary
via aerea	by air mail	voce (f.)	voice
viaggiare	to travel	voi	you (pl.)
viaggiatore, -trice	traveller	volante	driving wheel
viaggio	travel, journey	volare	to fly
viale	avenue	volentieri	willingly, with pleasure
vicino	near, close (adj. and adv.)	volere	to want
vicino/a (n.)	neighbour	volere bene a qualcuno	to be fond of, love, someone
vigile (urbano)	policeman	volere dire	to mean
vigile del fuoco	fireman	volo	flight
vigore (m.)	vigour	volta	time, occasion
in vigore	in force	vostro/a	your
villaggio	village	vulcanico/a	volcanic
vincere	to win (pp. vinto)	vulcano	volcano
vino	wine	vuoto/a	empty
viola	violet		
visione (f.)	vision	Z	
visita	visit, medical examination	zero	zero
visitare	to visit (place); to examine (patient)	zia	aunt
viso	face	zìo	uncle
vita	life	zitto/a	quiet, silent be quiet!
		sta' zitto	
		zona	zone, area
		zucchero	sugar
		zucchini	zucchini baby marrow,
		zuppiera	soup tureen

English–Italian glossary

This list is selective. Words included in the ‘Vocabularies’ in the various units are not usually given below. (The list of topics on p. 348 will help you find the appropriate ‘Vocabularies’.) Many words that are similar in Italian will be located easily in the Italian–English glossary. The gender of nouns not ending in **-o** or **-a** has been included. The feminine of adjectives is given when it is different from the masculine.

A		already	già
a, an	un, una	also	anche
a lot	parecchio, molto	although	benchè
above	sopra	among	fra, tra
to accept	accettare	amusement	divertimento
accident	incidente (m.)	amusing	divertente
according to	secondo	answer	risposta
across	attraverso	to answer	rispondere
advance	anticipo	any (it doesn’t matter which)	qualsiasi
advice	consiglio	apartment, flat	appartamento
aeroplane	aereo	to apologize	scusare
after	dopo	appointment	appuntamento
afternoon	pomeriggio	arrival	arrivo
again	ancora, di nuovo	art gallery	museo, galleria
against	contro		d’arte
age	età	at	a
ago	fa	at least	almeno
agreement	accordo	to attend (school)	frequentare
airport	aeroporto	average	medio/a
all	tutto/a		
to allow	permettere	B	
almost	quasi	bad	cattivo/a
alone	solo/a	badly	male
along	lungo/a		

bag	borsa	by ('by Sunday')	entro
bank	banca	by	da, per
to be	essere		
to be able to	potere	C	
to be bored	annoiarsi	to call	chiamare
to be born	nascere	car	macchina, auto
to be called	chiamarsi		(-mobile) (f.)
to be fond of	volere bene a	car park	parcheggio
beautiful	bello/a	cash desk	cassa
because	perché	cathedral	duomo,
to become	diventare		cattedrale (f.)
before	prima (di)	cellar	cantina
to begin	cominciare	centre	centro
beginning	inizio	century	secolo
behind	dietro (a/di)	to change	cambiare
to believe	credere	change (after	resto
besides	inoltre	paying)	
better (adv.)	meglio	chemist's shop	farmacia
better (adj.)	migliore	cheque	assegno
between	fra, tra	child	bambino/a
beyond	oltre	to choose	scegliere
big	grande,	city	città
	grosso/a	to clean	pulire
bigger	maggiore	clean	pulito/a
biggest	massimo/a,	climate	clima (m.)
	più grande	coin	moneta
bill	conto	cold (adj.)	freddo/a
birthday	compleanno	cold (n.)	raffreddore (m.)
block of flats	palazzo	colour	colore (m.)
book	libro	to come	venire
to book	prenotare	comfortable	comodo/a
booking	prenotazione (f.)	comfortable, to	accomodarsi
boy	ragazzo	make oneself	
brave	coraggioso/a	common	comune
bread	pane (m.)	consulate	consolato
bread roll	panino	to continue	continuare
breakfast	(prima)	cooking	cucina
	colazione (f.)	cool	fresco/a
bus	autobus (m.)	corner	angolo
business	affari (pl.)	correct	giusto/a
but	ma	to cost	costare
to buy	comprare		

cotton	cotone (m.)	egg	uovo (m.; pl. uova, f.)
country	paese (m.)	electricity	elettricità, luce (f.)
currency	valuta	embassy	ambasciata
current	attuale	engaged (not free)	occupato/a
D			
daily	quotidiano/a	to enjoy oneself	divertirsi
damp	umido/a	entrance	entrata
date	data	envelope	busta
day	giorno, giornata	environment	ambiente (m.)
dear	caro/a	et cetera, etc.	eccetera, ecc.
to decide	decidere	even	pure
to decrease	diminuire	evening	sera
to deliver	consegnare	every	ogni
to depart	partire	everyone	ognuno, tutti
departure	partenza	everywhere	dappertutto
dialling code	prefisso	example	esempio
to die	morire	excellent	ottimo/a
difference	differenza	to excuse	scusare
different	diverso/a, differente	exit	uscita
difficult	difficile	expense	spesa
directory	elenco	expensive	caro/a
dirty	sporco/a	to explain	spiegare
discount	sconto	F	
to displease	dispiacere	factory	fabbrica
to do	fare	fairly	abbastanza
doctor	dottore, -essa; medico	to fall	cadere
door	porta	family	famiglia
double	doppio/a	far	lontano
down	giù	farmer	contadino
to drive	guidare	fast	rapido/a, veloce
during	durante	field	campo
E			
each	ogni	firm	ditta
early	presto, in anticipo	first	primo/a
earth	terra	fish	pesce (m.)
		flat (n.)	appartamento
		flight	volo
		follow	seguire
		football	calcio

for	per	hand	mano (f.)
foreigner	straniero/a	happy	felice, contento/a
free	libero/a	to have	avere
French	francese	he	lui
fresh	fresco/a	to heal	guarire
friend	amico/a	health	salute
from	da, di	healthy	sano/a
fruit	frutta	heavy	pesante
full	pieno	hello (on telephone)	pronto
		to help	aiutare
G		help	aiuto
garden	giardino	here	qua, qui
generally	in genere, generalmente	here is, are	ecco
to get by	cavarsela	high	alto/a
to get in/on (vehicle)	salire su	hill	collina
to get off/out of (vehicle)	scendere da	history	storia
to get up	alzarsi	to hold	tenere
girl	ragazza	holiday	vacanza
to give	dare	hospital	ospedale (m.)
to go	andare	hot	caldo/a
to go down	scendere	hotel	albergo
to go out	uscire	hour	ora
to go up	salire	house	casa
gold	oro	how?	come?
good wishes	auguri	how many?	quanti?
good heavens!	accidenti!	how much?	quanto?
goodbye	arrivederci, arrivederLa	however	comunque, però
government	governo	hunger	fame (la)
to greet	salutare	I	
greeting	saluto	ice cream	gelato
to grow	crescere	if	se
guide	guida (f.) (even if male)	illness	malattia
guidebook	guida (f.)	immediately	subito
		impossible	impossibile
		in	a, in
		in fact	in effetti, in realtà
H		in front of	davanti a
half	metà, mezzo	in short	insomma
ham	prosciutto		

indeed
to injure
inside
instead
interesting
to introduce

infatti
ferire
dentro
invece
interessante
presentare

to lose
to love
lovely
luckily
lucky
lunch

perdere
amare
bello/a
meno male
fortunato/a
pranzo

K

to kill
kind
kitchen
to know

uccidere
gentile
cucina
sapere (fact),
conoscere
(person/place)

M

magazine
to make
to make a
mistake
man

rivista
fare
sbagliare

uomo (pl.
uomini)

many
market
married
match (sport)
to matter
to mean
meanwhile
meat
mild
minute
Miss
money

molti
mercato
sposato/a
partita
importare
volere dire

intanto
carne (f.)

mite

minuto

signorina

denaro (sing.),
soldi (pl.)

mese

più

autostrada

montagna

bocca

signor(e)

signora

molto/a

museo

L

language
last (most
recent)
last (in series)
lateness
lavatory

to learn
leather
left
less
letter
lift
light (n.)
light (adj.)
like
to like

to listen
little bit
to live
long
to look at
to look for

lingua
scorso/a

ultimo/a
ritardo
gabinetto,
toilette (f.)
imparare
pelle (f.)
sinistro/a
meno
lettera
ascensore (m.)
luce (f.)
leggero/a
come
piacere a (see
Units 2, 3 8)
ascoltare
un poco, un po'
abitare, vivere
lungo/a
guardare
cercare

month
more
motorway
mountain
mouth
Mr
Mrs
much
museum

N

name
near

nome (m.)
vicino/a

to need	avere bisogno di	P	
never	mai	pain	dolore (m.)
never mind!	pazienza!	pair	paio (m.;
new	nuovo/a		pl. paia , f.)
news	notizia	paper	carta
newspaper	giornale (m.)	passport	passaporto
next	poi	to pay	pagare
next (in order)	prossimo/a	peace	pace (f.)
next to	accanto a	pen	penna
night	notte (f.)	people	gente (f. sing.)
no	no	pepper	pepe (m.)
no one	nessuno/a	perhaps	forse, può darsi,
noise	rumore (m.)		magari
not at all	mica	piece	pezzo
not even	neanche,	place	posto, luogo
	nemmeno,	plan	pianta, progetto
	neppure	platform	binario (lit.
nothing	niente, nulla		track)
to notice	notare	to play	giocare
now	adesso, ora	to play (musical	suonare
number	numero	instrument)	
		please	per favore,
O			per piacere,
of	di	pleased	per cortesia
office	ufficio	poor	contento/a
often	spesso	possible	povero/a
old	vecchio/a	postcard	possibile
on	su	to prefer	cartolina
on the contrary	anzi	price	preferire
on the other	invece	project	prezzo
hand		to put	progetto
only	solo		mettere
open	aperto/a	Q	
to open	aprire	question	domanda
opposite	di fronte a		
to order	ordinare	R	
other	altro/a	rain	pioggia
our	nostro/a	to rain	piovere
outside	fuori	rather	piuttosto
own	proprio/a		
to own	possedere		

to read	leggere	skin	pelle (f.)
ready	pronto/a	to sleep	dormire
to realize	rendersi conto di	slow	lento/a
really	davvero, proprio	slowly	piano, lentamente
reason	motivo, ragione (f.)	small	piccolo/a
receipt	ricevuta	to smoke	fumare
to receive	ricevere	so	così, dunque
region	regione (f.)	so many	tanti
to remain	rimanere	so much	tanto/a
to rest	riposarsi	so that	perché (+ subjunctive)
restaurant	ristorante (m.)	softly	piano
to return	tornare	some	alcuni/e (with pl.); qualche (with sing.)
rich	ricco/a	someone	qualcuno/a
right (not left)	destro/a	something	qualche cosa, qualcosa
right (v. duty)	diritto	space	posto, spazio
room	stanza	to speak	parlare
		square	piazza; (adj.) quadrato/a
S		stamp	francobollo
same	stesso/a	state	stato
to say	dire	station	stazione (f.)
scarcely	appena	still (not moving)	fermo/a
schedule	orario	still (adv.)	ancora
sea	mare (m.)	stop (bus-)	fermata
to see	vedere	to stop	fermare
to seem	sembrare, parere	straight	dritto/a
to sell	vendere	strange	strano/a
several	parecchi	street	strada, via
she	lei	sun	sole (m.)
shopping, to do the	fare la spesa	supermarket	supermercato
short	breve, corto/a	supper	cena
to show	mostrare	sweet (adj.)	dolce
silk	seta		
similar	simile	T	
since (reason)	siccome, poichè	to take	prendere
since (time)	da	to take care of	curare
sister	sorella		
to sit down	accomodarsi, sedersi		
size	misura		
skilful	bravo/a		

when?	quando?	to work	lavorare
where?	dove?	(opposite:	
while	mentre	play)	
who?	chi?	worker	operaio
why?	perché?	world	mondo
to win	vincere	worse	peggiore
wine	vino	to write	scrivere
wish	augurio		
with	con	Y	
with pleasure	volentieri	year	anno
woman	donna	yesterday	ieri
wool	lana	you (formal)	Lei
word	parola	you (fam.)	tu
work	lavoro	young	giovane
to work	funzionario	your	vostro, tuo, Suo
(to function)			

Index

The numbers given against each entry refer to the unit(s) where the relevant information is given.

Grammar

- adjectives 2, 5
- adverbs 8
- articles
 - definite 3, 5
 - indefinite 1
 - with prepositions 6
- comparative 5
- conditional 15
 - past conditional 15
- diminutives 11
- future 16
 - in reported speech 16
- gerund 11
- imperative 6
 - of **sapere** 11
 - with personal pronouns 14
- imperfect 13
- imperfect subjunctive 15
- impersonal verbs, present
 - perfect 11
- infinitive 1, 2, 3, 11, 15
- infinitive + personal pronouns 14
- interrogative pronouns and adjectives 3, 4
- moods/modes 15
 - negatives 3
 - 'neither . . . nor' 15
 - 'no longer' 14
 - 'no one' 15
 - 'not at all' (strong) 13
 - 'not even' 13
 - 'nothing, not . . . anything' 11
 - with present perfect 15
 - nouns 1, 2,
 - plural of 5, 7
 - numbers 1, 4
 - ordinal 3
 - partitive ('some') 7
 - passive 8, 9
 - past conditional 15
 - past definite 13
 - past participle, formation 8, 10
 - agreement when used with **essere**
 - agreement with direct object pronoun 16
 - personal pronouns + imperative 14
 - with infinitive 14
 - pluperfect indicative 16
 - pluperfect subjunctive 15
 - possessive adjectives and pronouns 10
 - prepositions 6
 - with the article 6
 - present indicative 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
 - present perfect
 - with **avere** 11, 16

with **essere** 10, 11
 with negatives 15
 pronouns
ci 12
ne 12
ci + ne 12
 pronouns, personal
 direct object 8
 indirect object 9
 reflexive 6
 strong 1, 5
 subject 1, 5
 two combined 14
 pronouns, relative 4
 questions 3
 reflexive verbs 6
 present perfect 11
 reported speech (future in) 16
 subjunctive, general 15
 imperfect 15
 present 17
 suffixes 11
 superlative 5
 absolute (**-issimo**) 8

Words and expressions

a 6
a causa di 13
ad esempio 9
affatto 13
altro 7
andare 6, 7
andarsene 16
avere 1, 5, 6, 17
basta 7
bere
 gerund of 11
 imperfect of 13
bisogno (avere bisogno di) 7
c'è/ci sono 8
che, che cosa 3, 4
che freddo! 10
chi 4

chissà 15
ci uses of 12
ci mette 4
ci vuole 9
cioè 9
come mai? 9
comunque 9
con + definite article 13
così 9
da 6, 8
da (qualcosa da + infinitive) 11
da + present tense 11
dare
 gerund of 11
 imperfect of 13
di 6, 7
dire 6
dovere 2, 3, 5, 6, 8
dovrei 5
dunque 9
ecco 1
essere 1, 5, 6
parcela 16
fare 6
 gerund of 11
 imperfect of 13
forse 15
giorno/giornata 14
gran 13
granchè 13
grazie a 13
in 6
in + definite article 11
invece 9
lei 1, 2
lo so 3
magari 15
maggior 5, 12
mi dispiace 1
mi piacciono 8
mi piace 2, 3, 8
mi piacerebbe 8

mica 13
minore 5, 12
morire 12

ne, uses of 12
neppure 13
niente 11
non importa 7
nulla 11

ogni 4

per favore 1
perché 4, 17
potere 5, 6, 7
potrei 5
prego 1
produrre, gerund of 11
proprio 4
può darsi 15

qualche 8
qualcosa 11
qualsiasi 4
quanto costa? 5
quello 5
questo 3, 5

salire 4
sapere 3, 6
sapere, imperative of 11
scendere 4
scusi 1, 6
secondo me 5
sera/serata 14
si impersonal 4, 5, 8
stare 10
 gerund of 11
 imperfect of 13
stare + gerund 13
stare per 10
su 6

un po' 7
uscire 7

va bene 1
venire 6
volere 5, 6
vorrei 5

Topics

age 10

 bar, café 1
 body 14

 clothes 6, 17
 colours 7
 countries 2

 date 6
 days of week 6
 distance and area 8

 false friends 5
 family 10
 finding the way 3
 food 9
 fruit 7

 geography of Italy 8
 greetings 1

 health 14
 holidays 10
 home 12

 Italian food 9

 letters, business 16
 letters, private 11

 meals 9
 months of year 6

 nationality 2

 occupation 2

 place 8
 points of compass 8
 police 11

 restaurant 9

 seasons 6

 telephone 6
 time 4
 travel 4

 weather 10
 weights and measures 7